

UE  
1  
C37

APR 20 1938

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

---



MARCH-APRIL, 1938

---

## *The National Guard Cavalry*

By BRIGADIER GENERAL EDWARD J. STACKPOLE, JR.



# CAVALRY COMBAT

The final and complete story of Cavalry (103 divisions) in the World War.

Here are recorded the outstanding cavalry operations in every Theater of War; recorded as to type of action; and each example followed by an analytical discussion and summary.

What the Reviewers say:

*Cavalry Combat* is the most expert appraisal in our literature of the present role of the mounted troop.—*Chemical Warfare Bulletin*.

The great value of the book is that it is a study not of generalship but of leadership.—*Canadian Defence Quarterly*.

*Cavalry Combat* is the twentieth century's ablest defense of the horse.—*The Infantry Journal*.

Over 500 pages.

Price \$2.50, postpaid.

To members of The United States Cavalry Association, \$2.00, postpaid.

Send your orders NOW to

The United States Cavalry Association

1624 H Street, N. W.,

Washington, D. C.

(Order Blank on Page 150)

Col. Geo. Hawkins  
4-22-38

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

PUBLISHED BI-MONTHLY BY THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

VOLUME XLVII  
NUMBER 2



MARCH-APRIL, 1938  
WHOLE NUMBER 206

MAJOR CHARLES S. KILBURN, CAVALRY, EDITOR

## CONTENTS

FRONTISPIECE (Chief of Cavalry) .....	98	A MESSAGE .....	145
MY GREETINGS TO ALL CAVALRYMEN .....	99	<i>By Major General Leon B. Kromer</i>	
<i>By Major General John K. Herr</i>		SOME OBSERVATIONS ON THE ATTACK	
THE NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY .....	100	BY COMBINED ARMS .....	146
<i>By Brigadier General Edward J. Stackpole, Jr.</i>		<i>By Brigadier General H. S. Hawkins, Retired</i>	
THE ELEMENT OF SURPRISE IN WARFARE ..	104	ONE CAVALRY .....	150
<i>By Colonel Troup Miller, Cavalry</i>		<i>By Major R. W. Grow, Cavalry</i>	
THE ARMY OF THE UNITED STATES .....	110	CAVALRY COMBAT—AS A TEXTBOOK .....	151
<i>By Colonel Adna R. Chaffee (Cav.) G.S.C.</i>		<i>By Colonel J. M. Wainwright, 3rd Cavalry</i>	
CRAZY BUSINESS—Part IV .....	114	SPECIAL ACTIVITIES:	
<i>By Peter B. Kyne</i>		A System of Remount Training Within the	
LIFE AND THE CAVALRY LEADER .....	122	Regiment .....	152
<i>By Major E. S. Johnston (Infantry) G.S.C.</i>		<i>By Lieutenant Hamilton H. Howze, 6th</i>	
CARE AND MAINTENANCE OF MOTOR		<i>Cavalry</i>	
VEHICLES OF THE CAVALRY REGIMENT		Hockey a Cheval—The Story of the Early Days	
(Horse) .....	126	of Polo .....	156
<i>By Captain H. H. D. Heiberg, Cavalry</i>		<i>By Reginald Hargreaves</i>	
THE PROTECTION OF CAVALRY AGAINST		Good Form in Hunting Appointments .....	160
LIQUID VESICANTS .....	131	<i>By Lieutenant Colonel W. M. Grimes, 2nd</i>	
<i>By Major Herbert L. Earnest, Cavalry</i>		<i>Cavalry</i>	
SPECIALIZATION .....	134	EDITOR'S SADDLE .....	164
<i>By Captain M. L. Stockton, Jr., 11th Cavalry</i>		LETTERS TO THE EDITOR .....	168
NOTES ON THE USE OF CAVALRY IN THE		NOTES FROM THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY .....	170
AMERICAN REVOLUTION .....	136	GENERAL HAWKINS' NOTES .....	173
<i>By Colonel Frederic G. Bauer, J.A.G.-Reserve</i>		WITH THE MECHANIZED CAVALRY .....	175
		BOOK REVIEWS .....	177
		ORGANIZATION ACTIVITIES .....	182

PUBLICATION DATE: APRIL 10, 1938

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR OPINIONS EXPRESSED IN PUBLISHED CONTRIBUTIONS

\$3.00 per year, foreign postage 50c additional. Single copy: 50c

Publishing Office: 1406 East Franklin Street, Richmond, Va. Editorial Office: 1624 H Street, N.W., Washington, D. C. Entered as second class matter at Richmond, Virginia, under the Act of March 3, 1879. For mailing at Special Rate of Postage provided in Section 412, Act of October 3, 1917. Copyright, 1938, by the United States Cavalry Association.



Photo by National Photo and News Service

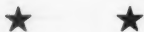
**MAJOR GENERAL JOHN K. HERR**

*The Chief of Cavalry*

*On his private mount "Star Witness," a grandson of "Man O' War"*



# MY GREETINGS TO ALL CAVALRYMEN



My message to you may be condensed to our ancient motto, *Mobilitate Vigemus*. We must adhere to it. We must resist every tendency to "exchange our birthright for a mess of pottage." We must never forget that basically our mobility centers around the horse, whether it be the iron horse or the horse of flesh and blood. It is the horse which carries us into battle, which takes us out of danger, and which furnishes us with the mobility that leads to surprise. We should not only have the best horses we can get but our horsemaster-ship must continue to be stressed with greatest emphasis.

Mobility will be greatly affected by organization, armament, and equipment. We are now about to undertake the 1st Cavalry Division maneuvers in order to test the most suitable type of organization for horse cavalry regiments and divisions. We must remember mobility demands that the individual horse and rider be stripped of everything which is not absolutely essential; that each unit include only those things which are essential to its normal missions. We must resist the tendency to assign to any unit weapons, the use of which will be exceptional. In such exceptional cases those particular weapons may be attached from a higher echelon. We must have adequate fire power but it must be so balanced with respect to mobility that the latter will be conserved. After all, fire power carried too far will destroy mobility. Mobility overemphasized will decrease fighting power. The exact type of organization, whether it be triangular or square, or otherwise, is not of prime importance if we preserve proper balance between mobility and fire power. In this connection the motto announced by the 2d Provisional Cavalry regiment in its tests is classic. "Let us lay aside every weight . . . and . . . run . . . the race that is set before us." (Hebrews, 1st Chapter, 1st verse.)

En route to Washington I was able to stop over at Fort Riley, Fort Leavenworth, and Fort Knox. At Knox I found our mechanized brothers operating on real Cavalry principles, using mobility to the utmost. There is no difference between the horse and mechanized Cavalry except that caused by the respective qualities of their mounts. From these contacts and from my association with the Cavalry Division, I know the Cavalry spirit to be as ardent as ever. The flame so ably held aloft by my distinguished predecessor is burning brightly.

The greatest factor in preserving and increasing our mobility is that of leadership. We must remember that, after all, the spiritual transcends the material. It matters little how well trained the horses, the men, and the smaller unit commanders may be if the leader has not the mobility of mind and body to exploit these assets. A heavy responsibility rests on all our Cavalry leaders of every grade to maintain an enthusiastic interest in training their units to fight at any time, anywhere, anyhow, and thus be ready for war. War is fighting. We must remember that execution is 90 per cent of everything. Unless the leaders take their units out and run them constantly through all the plays which may confront them in war, they will not be ready. To meet sudden and unexpected situations every commander, from squad to division, should be prepared and able, by fragmentary oral orders, to engage any or all of his command in the least possible time. A real Cavalry leader must be as wise as the serpent and as fierce as the eagle.

I have an abiding faith in our Cavalry. *Mobilitate Vigemus*.

JOHN K. HERR,

Major General, U. S. Army,  
Chief of Cavalry.

# The National Guard Cavalry

By BRIGADIER GENERAL EDW. J. STACKPOLE, JR.

52nd Cavalry Brigade, Pennsylvania National Guard

Illustrated by Alden Turner



N DAYS OF OLD when knights were bold, and barons held full sway," the man on the horse, lance-equipped, was a figure to conjure with.

With the advent of the high-powered rifle, his value on the Martian stock exchange receded. The gasoline era, the ubiquitous machine gun, and finally the age of mechanization have successively delivered right and left jabs to the horse cavalry until now it looks about, through glazed eyes, in the hope of spotting a friend or so outside its own ranks who might still have faith in its continued usefulness on the field of battle.

Like a ray of sunshine through a rift in the clouds came emphatic statements in the press from the Secretary of War and the Chief of Staff, in December, 1937, that the horse cavalry is definitely in the picture for future wars.

Despite these firm statements, the clouds of doubt have not been dispelled in the mind of the National Guard cavalryman, who seeks further assurance in high places that he is not to be relegated to a status of impotence. On the contrary, if the government expects him to devote his time and energy to fulfilling his mission in the scheme of national defense, at a considerable sacrifice to his private occupation of making a living, it is only fair that he be given a frank, forthright indication of the plans and purposes of the War Department affecting his military existence. He feels, naturally, that he must be given the necessary organization, personnel, and equipment to modernize and fashion his arm into an effective weapon of national defense.

## *The National Defense Act*

The land forces of the United States, available for the initial phases of war, are comprised in the existing Regular Army, the Marine Corps, and the National Guard. These elements constitute a force of approximately 400,000 officers and men, a large portion of whom are but partially trained and equipped for their M Day missions. It is this force, however, to which the nation must look for its chief reliance upon the outbreak of hostilities.

"... Cavalry is as important today as it has ever been".

—General Pershing

The National Defense Act provides for 18 Infantry and 4 Cavalry Divisions of the National Guard. Since the War the National Guard has made strenuous efforts to complete the organization and equipment of the 18 Infantry Divisions. These divisions are now about 98.8% complete.

The National Guard Cavalry presents a different picture. Neither in organization, nor in personnel, nor in equipment can its state of health be compared to that enjoyed by the Infantry Divisions. The Cavalry is less than 70% complete, and the 30% deficiency represents the vital brain and nerve centers, the arms, and most of the legs, without which a body can scarcely be expected to go places and do things.

Logically enough, then, the Cavalry poses two questions, the answers to which it sincerely believes are of vital importance to the country. First, does the Army of the United States need the services of the 4 Cavalry Divisions of the National Guard, as provided in the National Defense Act? Assuming an affirmative answer to the first question, the second is: when will the powers-that-be recognize the deficiencies of the Cavalry and correct them by an injection of modernization that will enable it to fulfill its destiny and be prepared to accomplish its M Day mission?

#### *The Effect of Propaganda*

Weak in organization, weak in numbers, weak in equipment, overshadowed by the brilliant conception of a stream-lined mechanized Army, sleek and shiny, roaring down the broad concrete highways at the rate of 300 or more miles per day, the horse cavalry became a natural target, with the cards apparently stacked against it—until the anti-cavalry advocates overreached themselves and set in motion forces of reaction which are beginning to gain momentum in all directions.

Horse cavalry suffers today from what might be termed an obsolescence complex. Not introspective, mind you. The high pressure propaganda against the usefulness of the horse in campaign gained impetus, after the World War, from three main sources: a lack of understanding on the part of Army commanders, resulting in inadequate employment of their cavalry during the War; the growth and development of the doctrine which appeared to see a cure-all in motorization and mechanization; the inarticulateness of those who were experienced in the effective use of horse cavalry and who had observed or participated in large scale operations involving cavalry in many theatres during 1914-1918.

The thought intrudes itself that the great motor industry, with an eye to sales, may be partially responsible for the long sustained effort to wash out old hobbin as a weapon of war. That, however, seems scarcely possible, because surely the motor magnates and their advisors appreciate the fact that horse cavalry is the substance from which mechanized cavalry will evolve—is evolving, in the proper ratio and to the extent made possible by appropriations.

History has proven, and common sense supports the

view, that cavalry is vitally essential in the early stages of a war. Its obvious missions are to protect concentrations, engage in reconnaissance and counter reconnaissance, clear the way for an advance of the main armies, secure advance positions or areas. And of far more importance to the American Army, we need cavalry of offensive power. Cavalry that can fight. An arm upon which the High Command can depend when a critical blow at a sensitive point in the enemy's armor promises effective and rich rewards.

#### *The Eyes of the Army*

In close coöperation, the air service and the cavalry are the eyes of the Army. It seems fundamental that the eyes should be able to see clearly and sharply, when vision is all important.

So far as the cavalry of the National Guard is concerned, its present capacity to perform the foregoing missions is extremely doubtful. This is not its fault. The cavalry of the National Guard is alert, aggressive, ambitious to serve. Its morale is high. Its commissioned and enlisted personnel have earned a high rating in efficiency, viewed from a citizen-soldier angle. It is quick to adjust itself in the accomplishment of its tasks. It recognizes its responsibilities as an auxiliary arm and works diligently at the job of fitting itself to perform its combat mission.

#### *Might This Be a Reason?*

Great military captains of the past waged victorious campaigns because they knew how to use their mobile forces—cavalry—by having them at the right place, at the right time, to take part in the decisive action. They were successful because they understood and were capable of using the tactical mobility of cavalry and, what is more to the point, were supremely conscious of the vital importance of having available a mobile unit when they needed it most—to operate in front, on the flanks, or in rear of their armies.

How many of the present and potential future leaders of American armies have the strategical and tactical knowledge and vision to emulate the successful field generals of history in their far-seeing employment of the mobile arm?

As a matter of cold fact, how many have thought deeply enough on the subject or have studied the use of cavalry with sufficient thoroughness to be capable of employing either horse or mechanized cavalry successfully in its historic rôle as a weapon of opportunity?

There is nothing in the doctrines taught at the service schools and the Army War College to support the contention that cavalry is not needed now and in the future. Quite the contrary is true, as any student of Leavenworth will testify.

It cannot be successfully denied that the present authorized proportion of cavalry, regardless of the extent to which the horse cavalry may eventually be transformed into mechanized cavalry, should be retained and completely organized. How else will our Army Commanders execute reconnaissance and counter reconnaissance over large areas? With what forces will they protect their ex-



posed flanks? By what means will they fill gaps, exploit successes, engage in prompt pursuit of defeated and retreating opponents?

It was Marshall Haig who said: "Infantry and Artillery can win battles; only Cavalry can make them worth winning."

10 shots against an enemy's flank or rear are worth 100 shots against his front. Man for man, cavalry has equal fire power with infantry. Add to that the mobility of cavalry and the cavalryman's fire power becomes doubly effective, because it can be directed against the more vulnerable parts of the enemy, his flanks and rear.

The "tactical mobility" of cavalry is far superior, over all kinds of terrain, and will continue so, because it can go places faster, up to 50 or 75 miles, deploy and go into action more quickly than men on foot or in motors.

### *It's Time to Act*

The Regular Cavalry is by no means immune to the machinations of an anti-cavalry element. The eventual fortunes of the Regular Cavalry and the National Guard Cavalry are inseparably linked together. Failure to infuse the breath of life into the Cavalry of the National Guard will inevitably weaken the entire mounted structure of the Army. To further overlook the deficiencies of the National Guard Cavalry will be disastrous.

If ignorance has been the keystone upon which these hostile elements have constructed their plans, the time has arrived to convert a passive defense into a very necessary and legitimate counter offensive.

At times the Cavalry wonders at the strange apathy displayed by the average infantryman and artilleryman in their attitude toward the mounted arm—the same apathy



*In lieu of trucks . . .*

that once prevailed between the foot soldier and the artillery soldier, until in the acid test of war they began to understand their mutual interdependence. The parallel is plain, if one recognizes the soundness of the strategic doctrines affecting the use of cavalry by GHQ and Army commanders in the initial phases of a campaign.

As stated before, 4 Cavalry Divisions of the National Guard are provided by the National Defense Act. Under present Tables of Organization, 260 units are provided for. Of these, 179 are organized and active; 81 are inactive and for the most part nonexistent, except on paper. Only the 8 horse brigades are organized and partly equipped. Three of the four Divisions are completely unorganized, lacking artillery, engineers, medical units, armored car squadrons, signal troops, headquarters troops, and quartermaster squadrons. There are no trucks, no anti-aircraft units, no calibre .50 machine guns for offensive or defensive action against hostile mechanized forces. Rifle troops are equipped with one instead of four light machine guns. Radio equipment is inadequate. As Divisions, the National Guard Cavalry could not sustain itself in the field without superhuman and probably ineffective improvisation.

Naturally expecting to move out first, on the outbreak of war, the Cavalry wonders how it can be expected to move to protect the mobilization of the Infantry Divisions and Corps, engage in strategic reconnaissance and counter reconnaissance, seize and occupy critical positions, and perform other normal missions in the early stages of the campaign under its present completely inadequate status.

Unblinded by the fact that the last three years of the World War was siege warfare, the best minds in this country realized that cavalry as utilized in Russia, Belgium, France, the Balkans, Italy, Palestine and elsewhere typified the successful employment of cavalry on its historic mission. And so they called for 18 Infantry and 4 Cavalry Divisions of the National Guard when they wrote the National Defense Act of 1920. It is now 18 years since that Act was passed, and but one of the 4 Cavalry Divisions has even the semblance of an administrative and tactical organization. That one, the 24th Cavalry Division, still lacks 22 of its 65 essential units.



In this country there are said to be over eleven million horses. It is an economic as well as a strategic fallacy to talk about mechanized forces completely eliminating the horse as a factor in the mobility of our reconnaissance forces. The lessons of history seem to have been temporarily forgotten. It is pertinent, to refresh the minds of those who may have read this far, to quote from the leaders of the World War:

"There is not in the world today an officer of distinction, recognized as an authority on military matters in a broad way, who does not declare with emphasis that Cavalry is as important today as it has ever been."—*General Pershing*.

"How we wished for a couple of divisions of cavalry trained as our cavalry is trained. Had these been available on November 2, (1918), I do not think any organized force of the enemy would have gotten over the Meuse, and our captures in matériel would have been much greater."—*Lt. General Liggett*.

"Cavalry is indispensable—not only to act merely as mobile infantry, but to reap the fruits of victory. Without cavalry it would have been impossible to have held the positions at Ypres or to have held the German attack."—*Marshall Haig*.

"I have never felt more confident in the future of our

arm (Cavalry) than I do today. It has retained the good, rejected the bad, and has not shrunk from the new."—*Field Marshall Allenby*.

"During the course of battle, thanks to the modern increase in the fire power of cavalry, it may perform work of the most varied nature. The cavalry, nevertheless, remains the favorite arm for reconnaissance and screening before battle, and for exploitation of the success after battle."—*Marshal Petain*.

"The cavalry was of the greatest importance and service to me in all my campaigns of movement. In the March, 1918 offensive I felt seriously handicapped by lack of cavalry."—*General Ludendorff*.

"Every new means of transportation appearing seems to be followed by a cry for doing away with the cavalry. Thus in a book which appeared in 1871 I found that many persons considered the cavalry superfluous, as they claimed the progress made in railway transportation was replacing it. Now it is the same with the motor. The truth is that the progress of technique in all branches of the service—including the cavalry—does not render existing arms superfluous, but improves them. In case of cavalry the assignment to it of motorized troops is augmenting its possibilities."—*Lieut. General von Kaiser*, (Inspector General of the German Cavalry).



## CAVALRY\*

In all the armies of the world the cavalry is undergoing, or rather has already undergone, a crisis, and it has almost been reduced to nothing in many armies. The experience of the World War, of the war of position and especially the development of aviation and tanks after the war, as well as the saturation of the front in modern wars with guns and machine guns—all these facts together have led the general staffs of many capitalistic states to the conviction that there will be no place for cavalry in future wars.

We are of a different opinion. It goes without saying that the conditions of cavalry operations in future wars will be quite different from those of the past and that they

will no longer completely justify the proud title of queen of battles [sic]. That is incontestable, especially for western countries. However, we are persuaded that our valiant cavalry will often again make a name for itself as the powerful and victorious Red Cavalry. Our Cavalry is completely reorganized in accord with modern conditions. It is not defenseless against aviation and tanks and it is organized in such manner that it can carry out important military operations either in coöperation with the other arms or independently.

Our frontiers, comrades, are immense and the Soviet State has many enemies. This is why the Red Cavalry, its valorous combatants and leaders will find the means of applying their force and will show by their work that the Red Cavalry is, as always, a victorious and crushing armed force and that it can and must carry out great tasks on all fronts (Applause).

\*Extract from speech made by Marshal of the Soviet Union, K. Voroshilov, Commissar of the People for Defense, on the 20th Anniversary of the Red Army and Navy at Moscow on February 22, 1938. Translated from *Le Journal de Moscou* (Moscow), 26 February, 1938.



# The Element of Surprise in Warfare

By Colonel Troup Miller, 11th Cavalry

The purpose of this paper is to point out the importance of the element of surprise in warfare and to show some of the different means by which it may be effected, illustrating these means by historical examples wherever they can be found.

## *General consideration of the element of surprise.*

First, let us consider for a few minutes the subject of surprise in general. It is one of the immutable principles of war. Ferdinand Foch wrote: "Surprise consists in the hard fact that the enemy appears in considerable numbers, without his presence having been known to be so near, for want of information, and without it being possible to assemble, for want of protection." Quite a trite definition of our subject, don't you think?

Surprise may be either strategic or tactical. It is difficult to distinguish between the two. Strategic surprise, however, has more to do with the maneuver of large forces or mechanized forces where great distances are involved.

One of the most striking examples in history of the real meaning of strategic surprise, that is, surprise by virtue of offensive movement, is found back in biblical times in Joshua's remarkable campaigns in Palestine. His operations were characterized by all of those elements which contribute to bringing about surprise—speed, secrecy, deception, tactics employed, etc.

He is reputed to have been the greatest strategist of biblical times. In leading the children of Israel into the Promised Land he not only displayed a remarkable knowledge of the topography of the country but an understanding of the relation of terrain to tactics which is not evidenced in any other commander prior to Alexander. He not only rejected the coastal plain with its protracted sieges and harassing raids from the mountain passes and the advance by the Judean hills with its fortified cities but chose a wide strategic turning movement through a region of loosely organized nomad states to enter from the east above the Dead Sea.

This audacious plan was entirely different from that of all previous invaders of this territory who have entered it from the north or south and it culminated with a sudden drive to the very loin of the mountain backbone of Canaan where Joshua established himself in an easily defended

position interdicting or flanking all the north-south communications of the area.

The Germans effected strategic surprise on a large scale at the outbreak of the World War in August, 1914. The invasion of Belgium was by no means unforeseen by the French but the numbers taking part in the flank movement far exceeded those which the French believed to be available for the purpose; they had gravely underestimated both the speed of the German mobilization and the value of their reserve units.

Joffre says in his memoirs: "The information coming in was always slow, incomplete and contradictory." He did not learn definitely of the advance of the German First Army north of the Meuse until August 20th. The Germans, concealing their movements behind an effective CAVALRY screen, had succeeded in assembling a mass of maneuver behind their extreme right. Joffre could not plan the maneuver of his armies until he received this positive information of the enemy. Again, the Germans concealed the movements of their reserve units so effectively that it was August 24th before Joffre discovered that they were being employed in active operations.

On the other hand, the German G. H. Q. did not know where the British were at the outbreak of the war and were surprised by practically stumbling upon them at Mons. And again in preparation for the important battle of Guise the French Fifth Army made so many movements of troops on a large scale that the Germans could make no intelligent estimate of their intentions. The counter-offensive of the French Fifth Army therefore came as a surprise to the Germans.

Tactical surprise usually occurs on the immediate battlefield and may be effected by bodies of troops of all sizes. It may be the result not only of slackness of security forces, the most common cause, but it may be due to a number of other factors such as concealing preparations (secrecy), disguising intentions (deception), by misrepresentations, by the use of new weapons or by new and novel methods of employing old weapons, by doing the unexpected, by the tactics employed, by rapidity of execution, by the mechanical movement of troops, by concealing the strength of troops and by the time of attack, form of attack and the direction from which the attack is made. The

location from which the main attack is made is a particularly important means of effecting surprise and has been used by all nations throughout the ages. Some of these means of gaining surprise will be treated briefly a little later in this lecture.

*The value of the surprise element.*

Before considering the methods of gaining tactical surprise let us discuss first the value of the surprise factor and the effect of surprise. Our Field Service Regulations tell us that all combat action must be based upon the effect of surprise. It states: "Surprise takes the enemy in a state of moral and material unpreparedness, prevents him from taking effective countermeasures, and often compensates for numerical inferiority of force. Surprise is sought not only in the initial stage of action and by the larger units but also throughout the action and by units of every echelon of command. The principle of surprise applies to fire as well as movement."

And again we are told: "By feint and demonstration, the attacker attempts to mislead the enemy as to the time and place at which the principal effort is to be made. Attacks designed merely to hold the enemy along a certain portion of the front are so made that they cannot be distinguished from the principal effort and that the enemy is compelled to commit the largest possible proportion of his forces to meet them."

In every case where surprise is attempted, it should be accompanied by a timely offensive action.

A contemporary of Joshua's, General Loutau, about

1150 B. C. wrote: "If you have far to go, march day and night. Surprise the enemy when he still deems you 10 miles away. An enemy that is surprised is half defeated."

The Command and General Staff School appreciates the value of the surprise element and is stressing it in its doctrine as taught there today. It is putting into application the principles I have just quoted from our Field Service Regulations. The form of attack especially favored is the wide envelopment which is essentially a maneuver designed to avoid the defensive position of the enemy. By activity and a show of strength the holding attack endeavors to draw to its front, or at least keep inactive, reserves which would otherwise oppose the main enveloping attack and by this means and by the conduct of feints, keeps the hostile commander uncertain and hesitating as to the location of the main attack. It thereby assists in securing surprise and in the actual creation of weakness at the point chosen for the main attack. In the attack, maneuver to the absolute limit permitted by the physical capacity of men, animals, and motors is encouraged in order to train our officers not "to bump their noses against stone walls."

In the *Infantry Journal* of November-December, 1935, there appeared an article entitled "Non-Conformists get a Break." It referred to the doctrine now being taught at Leavenworth from which the following extract is taken: "we find stratagems favored in the problems. Students are encouraged to strive for surprise and to endeavor to outsmart the enemy. Mechanized forces, aviation, smoke, motorized infantry movements, feinting the main attack



"Jackson himself had some maxims that are as worthy of a place in the student's note book as Napoleon's were worthy of room in Jackson's saddle pockets"

on one flank and then attacking the opposite flank, marching in many small columns, are all used—sometimes in a highly original manner—to achieve the unexpected.” The student with novel ideas may have fared badly once, but he is sitting pretty today.

The “Principles of Strategy,” a text at the Command and General Staff School, has the following to say about the subject we are considering: “Surprise is the most deadly of all weapons. The great commander is vitally concerned with the problem of bringing it about. When troops are surprised their emotions and not their intellect are in control. Their minds become confused and they are very liable to error. Surprise has been the foundation of almost all the grand tactical and strategic combinations of the past as it will be of those to come.” Surprise therefore may be considered the key to victory for its effect is usually decisive.

*The methods of gaining tactical surprise.*

*a. By maneuver or rapidity of execution.*

Napoleon said: “It must always be taken for granted that the enemy has maneuvered during the night in order to attack at daybreak.” Maneuver especially when coupled with speed, is one of the most effective means of gaining surprise. To have your troops suddenly appear at a point where you were not expected by the enemy is certainly a great advantage to you. The enemy will be given no time to make his dispositions to meet your newly discovered forces.

It is particularly desirable that the surprise element in a maneuvering or enveloping force be retained as long as possible. It should therefore not only maneuver by night but every precaution must be taken to insure that its presence is not detected by the enemy.

The Mongols, under Genghis Khan, overran Asia and eastern Europe in the 13th Century. The encircling movement was their favorite maneuver, the sweep that turns an enemy flank and takes him in rear. They made the maximum use of secrecy, deception and surprise. They moved on as broad a front as conditions permitted, with a view to executing a wide maneuver directed at the enemy's rear. They fixed the enemy with part of their forces, either by attack or defense or by a combination of these, while the maneuvering force was moving wide of the flank to reach the enemy rear.

Tactically they confounded their enemy by the speed and precision of their movements, by the accuracy of their fire, and by the rapidity, unity and continuity of the maneuver with which they pressed home their attack.

Napoleon got the better of his enemy habitually through speed. Colonel Vachee in his “Napoleon at Work” says that one of his outstanding principles was to surprise the enemy by strategy and secrecy by the unexpectedness and rapidity of his operations.

In our own Civil War there is no more illustrious example of deceiving the enemy by maneuver than the operations of Stonewall Jackson in his campaign in the Shenandoah Valley. Steele in his “American Campaigns”

tells us that “Jackson himself had some maxims that are as worthy of a place in the student's note book as Napoleon's were worthy of room in Jackson's saddle pockets.” The one which he appeared to keep foremost in his mind was to “always mystify, mislead and surprise the enemy if possible.”

To quote from Steele: “By making demonstrations with his cavalry against Bank's detachment at Harrisonburg and New Market, on the 29th and 30th of April (1862), then marching in the mud a few miles up Luray Valley, then crossing the Blue Ridge to the railway at Mechum's River Station, Jackson completely mystified and misled the enemy, and fell upon Milroy and Schenck at McDowell before Banks or Fremont, or Stanton at Washington, had any notion where he was.

Banks fell back to Strasburg, and Milroy and Schenck were driven back upon Fremont at Franklin. Then Jackson returned to the Valley; and his movement was so thoroughly screened by Ashley's cavalry that Fremont thought he was still in his front; and Banks had no idea where he was until he had flung his army across the Massanutten, united it with Ewell, and hurled the combined force upon Kenly, overwhelming him at Front Royal.”

“Then he chased Banks beyond the Potomac and threatened to cross that river, thus throwing Washington and the whole North into a panic. This induced Mr. Stanton to order McDowell and Fremont to Strasburg in order to cut off his retreat. Although Fremont had got within twenty-five miles, and Shields within twelve miles of Strasburg when the head of Jackson's Army was twenty-five and his rear guard fifty miles from that town, Jackson managed, with swift marching and the uncertainty and hesitation of Fremont and Shields to slip between them, and make good his escape, without the loss of a regiment, or a wagon of his seven-mile train of captured stores and munitions.”

*b. By doing the unexpected.*

Surprise is effected by doing the unexpected and thereby creating a situation for which the enemy is unprepared. General Fuller, the British writer, has this to say about “originality” which has an important bearing on the subject which we are discussing: “Originality, not conventionality, is one of the main pillars of generalship. To do something that the enemy does not expect, is not prepared for, something which will surprise him and disarm him morally. To be always thinking ahead and to be always peeping around corners. To spy out the soul of one's adversary, and to act in a manner which will astonish and bewilder him; this is generalship. To render the enemy's general ridiculous in the eyes of his men, this is the foundation of success.”

The first thought of a great commander is to outwit his adversary and to strike where he is least expected. What Federal general would have believed that at the battle of Chancellorsville, Lee confronted with 90,000 Federal troops would detach one-half of his own small force of 50,000 men to attack the enemy in the flank and



rear? The very course which appears to ordinary minds so beset with difficulties and dangers as to be beyond the pale of practical strategy has time and again been that which led to decisive victory.

On the night of November 5-6, 1914, a battalion of French Infantry made a surprise crossing of the Aisne River at Saint Mard on the German front. Surprise was gained by noiselessly floating the boats down the river in the sector occupied by the French to the crossing site near the flank of the German front lines. The Germans thought that their flank was protected by the river and the canal paralleling it and had only a small force there to defend it which was withdrawn before daylight.

The crossing of the battalion and its flank attack without artillery preparation in conjunction with the frontal attack of a French infantry division was a complete surprise to the Germans and important terrain was retaken in an hour which had previously been lost in stubborn fighting extending over a period of a month. This surprise was accomplished by doing what the Germans considered "the impossible."

*c. By the tactics employed.*

Surprise may be effected by the tactics employed. Let's return to Joshua. The campaigns of Joshua in Palestine are among the earliest examples of strategic and tactical surprise. Joshua employed long night marches and many other means of deceiving his enemy. One of his most notable examples of tactical surprise and the unique tactics employed is found in his campaign against the small city of Ai, a strategic point in the Judean hills. He placed a large detachment in ambush northwest of Ai, moving them under cover of darkness through mountain passes, established signal communications with them, and then approached the city frontally with his main body. When the defenders attempted to drive them off the frontal element withdrew, being pursued by the defenders. Joshua then signalled his detachment in ambush who entered and fired the city; the defenders looked back and were confused, and Joshua's main body reformed and renewed the frontal attack. The tactical surprise was complete and so was the annihilation which followed.

*d. By concealing preparations—secrecy.*

*By disguising intentions—deception.*

Ever since the crafty, wily Greeks under Ulysses placed the wooden horse before the walls of Troy deception has been practiced in war. One of the most noted examples in modern warfare of disguising intentions is found in Allenby's Palestine Campaign. This entire campaign is full of surprise attacks and secret movements by his cavalry and other forces which were ably assisted in gaining this surprise action and in maintaining secrecy in their movements by the magnificent work of the Royal Air Force.

Preston in his "Desert Mounted Corps" says of Allenby in Palestine: "It is doubtful if there has ever been a greater master of the art of deception in war than the British Commander-in-Chief. No detail was too small, no dodge too insignificant to engage his full attention."

In August, 1918, Allenby's front ran from the mouth of the Jordan River northwest to the Mediterranean Sea. The mass of his cavalry, the Desert Mounted Corps, was on his right in the Jordan Valley sector, infantry holding the remainder of the line. His plan was to hold his right lightly, mass the bulk of his infantry on his left for his main effort near the sea, effect a breakthrough there and then rush the Desert Mounted Corps through the gap.

The essence of the plan was secrecy and secrecy was not easy to insure when nearly all of the cavalry had to be transferred from the eastern to the western end of the line, many other shifts had to be made and supplies of all kinds dumped in large quantities.

Raids across the Jordan had given the enemy the impression that the British intended to attack on that flank and General Allenby set himself to foster this belief by every possible means.

A very difficult concentration was accomplished and the attack was highly successful, the Turks being completely surprised. The great success of the British was due largely to the special measures taken to prevent information from reaching the enemy and to disguise the preparations made for the attack. It is very interesting to note some of these measures taken to surprise the Turks.

For two months prior to the attack the British had gained air superiority. Until a few days before the attack knowledge of its details was confined to division commanders only.

Units which moved westward left their camps standing and replaced their horse lines with thousands of dummy horses. Units moving westward were only allowed to march by night while all eastward movements were made as obvious as possible. Rumors for the benefit of spies were spread behind the lines to encourage belief that the attack was to be on the right. No movement by day and no fires at any time were allowed in the new camps. Watering of animals by daylight was reduced to a minimum. All new gun and machine gun emplacements were occupied and photographed from the air on completion; if visible, they were either re-camouflaged until they became invisible or demolished.

Two months before zero day days were selected for intense artillery and machine gun activity. This practice enabled registration to be carried out from new emplacements without arousing suspicion.

The bridging of the Auja River was overcome by the establishment of a bridging school on that river two months before the attack; thus the Turks were accustomed to the sudden appearance of a number of new bridges across the river.

*e. By misrepresentations.*

In the American preparations for the St. Mihiel offensive General Pershing sent General Bundy with a Corps Staff to Belfort as a ruse to make preparations for an offensive by the American First Army in that sector. The presence of a Major General and an active staff in Belfort caused such apprehension among the Germans

that they soon reinforced the threatened sector with three divisions. A carelessly, but intentionally, misplaced copy of General Bundy's instructions by a staff officer fell into the hands of German spies and served to further confirm the apparent intentions of the Americans to launch an offensive in that region.

Napoleon, on the third day of the battle of Arcola when success had been denied him, was forced to resort to a ruse. He sent all the trumpeters and drummers he could get together, with part of the guard, in a wide half-circle to a position in the enemy's rear where he had them sound the charge. The wearied Austrians became panic stricken and one of their divisions fell back. The French, encouraged by the rout of part of the foe, renewed their attack and victory was snatched out of a morass of despair.

And, may I remind you that it was by vigorous signalling to an imaginary supporting detachment that Sergeant York in the Meuse Argonne offensive was able single handed to capture one hundred and thirty-two Germans. Is this not an excellent illustration of falsely misrepresenting the true situation of affairs?

*f. Employment of new weapons and new methods of employing old weapons.*

The use of poison gas at Ypres by the Germans in 1914 was a startling and disastrous surprise to the enemy and the Germans were equally dumfounded when the British first used tanks against them on the Somme.

Camouflage played an important part during the World War in concealing installations of all kinds, which assisted in effecting surprise. Smoke likewise was widely and effectively employed to mislead the enemy or to conceal the movement of troops.

Attacks by the Allies in August, 1918, and the following months without preliminary artillery bombardment were such a departure from the accepted rule and such a novel practice that they resulted in complete surprise to the enemy.

*g. By the mechanical movement of troops.*

The World War was replete with many notable examples of surprise resulting from the mechanical movement of troops. One of the most outstanding was the movement by night of the large number of American divisions by bus in September, 1918, from the St. Mihiel sector to the Meuse Argonne sector. The Germans knew that preparations were being made for an offensive in the Meuse Argonne but they were startled by the severity and strength of the American attack.

*h. Preconceived idea about the enemy.*

On August 22, 1914, the French IV Corps was completely surprised in the fog in a meeting engagement with the Germans at Ethe-Virton and badly defeated. This surprise and defeat were due to lack of proper study and interpretation of available enemy information and to the fact that the French higher echelons had a preconceived idea as to the enemy's intentions. They believed that the march of the French IV Corps would be unopposed whereas it was actually confronted by strong German

forces. The French were further handicapped by bad weather and a heavily wooded area which made aerial observation difficult. This condition called for energetic ground reconnaissance measures which were not taken though cavalry was available.

Pope was surprised and defeated by Lee at Second Manassas because he would not believe that the various Confederate forces were located where they were reported to be and because of poor reconnaissance. Nor did he dream that Lee would separate his forces and make the moves he did.

*i. Cavalry and artillery as surprise elements.*

Cavalry is the arm par excellence for effecting surprise. It uses its mobility to extend its power of maneuver and its fire power to strike with surprise before the enemy is prepared to receive the attack. Surprise is one of the most important features of cavalry offensive action and should always be sought.

Surprise by cavalry may result from one or more of the following: the time of attack; the form of attack; the direction from which the attack is made; the location from which the main attack is made; and the type of action, either or both, mounted or dismounted.

There is no more classic example in the whole World War of a surprise counterattack than the mounted intervention of the French 4th Squadron, 10th Chasseurs, south of Soissons on May 30, 1918. The French 299th Infantry had been driven back with serious losses from the ridge at Berzy-le-Sac. All reserves had been engaged. A mounted attack was necessary to relieve the pressure so the commander of the French 74th Infantry Division ordered his divisional cavalry to make it. Eighty troopers drew saber and charged. In a few minutes the charge had covered a distance of two kilometers. It had swept the plateau first from west to east, then from south to north. The Germans were driven back in confusion and surrendered to the French supporting infantry in large numbers without resistance. Result: One chasseur was wounded; none were killed. Eleven horses were killed, ten were wounded, three were missing.

The lesson to be learned from this audacious operation would appear to be that machine guns sited for knee-high fire, if surprised, are not as effective against cavalry as supposed.

In modern warfare artillery also applies the principle of surprise. It obtains strategical surprise by quick and concealed concentrations of large artillery forces at the decisive point of the main effort. It obtains tactical surprise by fire without preliminary adjustment, night artillery preparation, by massed concentrations, by shifting of fire and by rapid maneuvers in the battlefield.

*j. Surprise on the defensive and in other tactical situations.*

It is not only on the offensive that surprise action must be striven for. Our Field Service Regulations tell us: "The defense, no less than the offense, must, whenever possible, act with the effect of surprise. The visible lines



of a defensive system must not betray the defensive dispositions but rather serve as a mask concealing the real defensive organization. Every available means must be employed to mislead the attacker as to the position on which the defense intends to make its principal effort. Provision for counter offensive action is the most effective defensive measure against surprise."

Likewise surprise is the most essential element in the success of night operations; troops must make their preparations and arrangements in such manner as to avoid betraying their intentions.

Again we find in river crossings secrecy in preparation and deception of the enemy as to the time and place of crossing are essential. By demonstrations carried out at various points on the river line attempt is made to deceive the enemy as to projected point of crossing.

*Conclusions and lessons to be learned from the foregoing.*

With the improvements in the airplane and the means of communication and with the vast size of modern armies strategic surprise will become harder and harder to attain. In the presence of modern aviation and fast moving mechanized elements greater complexities, more subtle deceptions, stratagems, and feints will have to be employed.

In modern warfare it is still possible to gain tactical sur-

prise by many means. While the means of observing and transmitting information of troop movements are greatly improved over those of the past, the mechanical means of moving troops are likewise far speedier. Also false information can be far more easily and quickly distributed.

The lesson to be learned from the opening phase of Allenby's battle of Megiddo is that surprise is possible even in modern warfare but only by perfect discipline on the part of the troops and almost superhuman forethought and attention to detail on the part of the staff, backed up by resolute action in the air.

To maintain secrecy, movements must be under cover of darkness and covered bivouac areas must be occupied during daylight hours. Unobserved daylight movements will require the restriction of hostile air observation by antiaircraft artillery and combat aviation.

To guard against surprise by the enemy will require not only the well known security measures employed in the past but a more distant and energetic ground reconnaissance by horse and mechanical elements, a highly trained intelligence service, and an air reconnaissance service capable of efficient night operations.

In this age of mechanized and motorized forces with their high speed, protection against surprise can be secured only by the adoption of distant, all-around, ground and air security measures.



## Value of Animals in Modern Warfare \*

*Mr. Starnes:* I wonder what the experience has been so far as animals are concerned in recent wars, whether the animal is looked upon as important as formerly.

*General Craig:* Draft animals have been greatly reduced. But we shall probably always have to have some horse-drawn artillery and some animal-drawn transport. A certain amount of mounted cavalry we must always keep. There are many circumstances where it is essential and where mechanized cavalry cannot take its place. Many misinformed people think of cavalry only as a reconnaissance or scouting force. That is not so. American cavalry is a powerful combat arm. A cavalry troop has fire power comparable to that of a company of infantry, and it is

particularly well equipped through its pack animals to keep a large supply of ammunition right up with its machine guns.

*Mr. Starnes:* It would seem as if the horse would be sure to be hit by the type of gun we have now, which would destroy him quickly.

*General Craig:* He is larger but he moves faster than the man on foot. His purpose is to advance men with rifles and machine guns. In advancing them he can take advantage of the cover of woods and of the cover afforded by ravines and draws much more easily than any motor can do. I ask you to read Allenby's campaign, in which a large force of cavalry was used with great success against a large force of infantry and artillery, resulting in the elimination of a German-allied nation from the World War.

\*Hearings before the subcommittee, Committee on Appropriations Estimates, F.Y. 1939.

# The Army of the United States

By COLONEL ADNA R. CHAFFEE, (Cavalry) G.S.C.

The national policy of the United States is one of non-aggression and of military isolation. We neither seek nor expect any particular war, nor do we count upon military alliances. Our basic military policy which is shaped by the National Defense Act of 1920 is, therefore, defensive in character and must be completely self-sustaining. Our professional soldiers are but agents who are charged continuously with carrying out the laws and duties entrusted to them by the Congress to ensure the carrying out of the Army's part of the National Defense.

The Army of the United States has three major components: The Regular Army, a federal force in being at all times; the National Guard when called into the service of the United States; and the Organized Reserves, a skeletonized federal force, in being only for very limited periods of training.

In the Regular Army we have a small professional Army whose duties are to furnish the garrisons required at all times in the foreign possessions; to furnish part of the initial force necessary to cover the mobilization of further forces; to serve as a laboratory for the development of military material and equipment; and as the training school of the military art capable of producing instructors for all components of the Army. It provides the necessary overhead for all components. The Regular Army also is the force upon which, in the end, rests the maintenance of law and order *as prescribed by the Federal Government*.

The authorized strength of the Regular Army under the National Defense Act was 18,000 officers and 280,000 enlisted men. This has been reduced in appropriation enactments to 12,300 officers and 162,000 enlisted men. Of these approximately 44,000 men are in the foreign garrisons and 128,000 in the United States. Taking out service troops, there are approximately 90,000 Regular Army combat soldiers in the United States including the Air Corps. The Regular Army at its existing strength is available to take the field at any time.

The National Guard, which is primarily a State force, is equipped and is trained for a short period annually by the Federal Government. It has a present authorized strength of 200,000 officers and men. In an emergency it may be called into the service of the United States without great delay. It is organized into regiments, brigades, divisions, in the appropriate arms so that it may properly and rapidly fit into the organization of war armies. The National Guard at its present strength could be brought into the field within thirty days. While it is not to be expected that they shall be as efficient as professional troops,

nevertheless the average training of the National Guard today is good and a further short period of intensive training should make them dependable soldiers.

The Organized Reserves are comprised almost entirely of the Officers' Reserve Corps which has a strength of approximately 94,000 officers. The Enlisted Reserves is negligible. A great majority of these officers are young and have received four years' military training in the ROTC as part of their college courses. Thereafter, they have received two weeks practical training per year as often as the War Department has been able to finance such training. Reserve officers have assignments to fill the gaps in Regular Army units which will be necessitated by the detachment of a large number of regular officers for the organization and training of war forces; and some have assignments to fill gaps in National Guard units. They will be needed in the transition from peace to war strength of these units. The bulk of the remainder form the officer cadres of Organized Reserve units, the soldiers for which will be brought out as the emergency develops by recruiting or by the draft.

It is easy for you to see, therefore, that the American people have adopted a system which is not intended to undertake a major war at the drop of a hat. The small peace-time Army must be built up by two of these successive components and the bulk of the war armies must be trained after the emergency has been recognized. It certainly is not an Army shaped for aggression or militarism.

Tactically the Army is organized into regiments of the several arms and these are combined into brigades and divisions of the combined arms. The division is the great unit of the combat team, capable of self-support and of conducting independent operations. It also is the command of a Major General.

*Decision in war is eventually gained upon the land*, and decision in land operations is gained upon the ground. Recent wars have again amply demonstrated these truths. A determined army can not be shot out of position and a determined people can not be bombed into submission. Sea and air troops are essential to the conduct of war, but the land army in the end guarantees the imposition of the national will upon the enemy.

Since, as I have said, we do not have aggressive ideas in our national military policies, we do not organize or train to fight in any particular theatre selected in advance. Therefore, our peace army, the laboratory, must contain every type of troops which a balanced force might need in any theatre. An army is the highest exemplification of the team. If it is not trained and geared to work as a fine team it is inefficient.

\*Address before the Committee of One Hundred at Miami Beach, Florida.

An army requires in its team powerful, slow moving elements capable of advancing step by step in the face of the heaviest resistance, capable of holding doggedly when all else is gone, capable of occupying and remaining and living dominant in a locality or a theatre of war.

*It requires lighter, faster moving elements for gathering information, screening against surprise, slipping around the flanks, through gaps, or overhead, to harass, slow up, or pin down the enemy until the slower moving elements can arrive to crush him.*

It needs supply elements to keep its steady stream of food and munitions flowing.

It needs communication elements to bind all these together and it needs a brain and many subordinate nerve centers to activate and control its movements.

These basic elements have existed since the dawn of history.

A basic principle of combining organization and weapons is that every unit, from the smallest upward, shall have those weapons which it habitually needs in the execution of every mission, and that weapons which find occasional or periodic usage shall be grouped in special units to be farmed out when occasion demands.

Today as formerly the infantry forms the backbone of armies; it is the most numerous. The infantry soldier, basically, is armed with the rifle and bayonet. He can fight anywhere that he can stand up, on the mountain, in the desert, in the swamp. His basic necessities are rifle, bayonet, ammunition and water. He is a self-contained force in himself and can operate in any sized war from that of the individual to the Army. The most important man in all armies is the trained individual soldier. Seven out of eight combat infantry soldiers in our army use the rifle. The Springfield rifle which we had in the World War is outmoded and we are taking steps towards equipping our men with a new semi-automatic shoulder rifle which will enable each man to deliver five times as many aimed shots in a period of time as could the World War soldier. The eighth man in the infantry squad carries the Browning automatic rifle, the lightest and most portable type of machine gun. Defensively each man is equipped with a steel helmet and a gas mask which is a great improvement over World War types. These then are the weapons of the smallest permanent infantry unit, the company whose strength is 120 men.

Each infantry division has a brigade of field artillery. Its smallest unit is the battery of four guns with their ammunition carrying vehicles. Artillery likewise is grouped into battalions, regiments and the brigade, so that if need be smaller elements may be detached to operate directly with the smaller elements of infantry, or the guns may serve the infantry division as a whole. The preponderant weapon of field artillery is the 75-mm. gun. We have taken that most excellent weapon, the French 75, of which we have many, and by utilizing the tube and recoil mechanism, and improving the carriage and adapting it for automotive traction, we have transformed it, at low cost, into a very efficient piece. From one position it could

formerly command a sector of one mile at a maximum range of 8,000 yards. It can now command a sector of twelve miles at a maximum range of 13,000 yards. In land operations it is not only necessary to have a quick firing accurate cannon to reach the enemy at a distance on the flat and on forward slopes, but to search out the ravines and the hollows; there howitzers and mortars find their places. In the World War we had the 155-mm. (6") howitzer, a regiment in the divisional field artillery brigade; we are replacing it today with the 105-mm. howitzer which has about the same mobility in traction as the 75-mm. gun. For its destructive power on enemy works we have improved and regrouped the 155-mm. howitzer so as to employ it in the Corps and Army artillery, reinforcing the artillery of the divisions. For our cavalry divisions we have developed the very mobile and efficient 75-mm. howitzer and we use it as a pack weapon, in draft, and with mechanized traction. The 155-mm. gun with a range of ten miles and the 240-mm. howitzer are the largest calibers ordinarily included in the mobile army.

And now we come to some of the elements which enter into these larger groupings in the Army, remembering that they may be detached at any moment to serve with a smaller grouping whose immediate mission and terrain demands and permits their utilization.

The first is aviation. In our service it has four recognized combat types; viz, observation, bombardment, attack, and pursuit. From the World War it has inherited a tactical nomenclature of its own: Flights, squadrons, groups and wings, but it could just as well conform to the established terminology of other arms and be called platoons, companies, battalions and regiments. Observation aviation in groups of three or more squadrons is assigned to the Corps and the Army, and its duty is the quick gathering and reporting of information and the adjustment of long-range artillery fire. For this purpose it utilizes the radio, panel, dropped message and photograph, and it is defensively armed. Enormous advance has recently been made in night photography. In the foreign possessions we we maintain composite wings of all types of aviation. In the United States the largest grouping is the GHQ Air Force which is in reality an Army or Group of Armies quota of aviation. It serves directly under the command of the General commanding a Theatre of Operations. We have recently seen in Spain and China that if the use of aviation does not contribute very directly to the attainment of the objectives of the ground armies, its effort is largely lost and serves but to arouse the resentment of the rest of the world. In the GHQ Air Force we find groups of bombardment, attack, pursuit, and long-range observation, assembled into wing commands.

Barring the fact that its operation and maintenance requires a high degree of technical skill, there is no mystery in military aviation. It has the romance, which cavalry formerly had, of comparative speed, of wide, sudden, unexpected movements, of battle, murder and sudden death. While in peace its dangers in training are comparatively more than the other arms, in war its percentage of casual-



ties is far less than those of the infantry, artillery and signal corps.

Bombardment aviation, tactically, is nothing more nor less than a grouping of very long range guns. The 30 caliber machine gun can fire 600 aimed shots per minute at an extreme range of two miles. The 75 can fire ten shots per minute at seven and one-half miles. The 16-inch seacoast gun one shot in two or three minutes at more than twenty-five miles. The bombardment airplane can deliver one or two very large shots per day at the range of several hundred miles. Its primary targets are railroads, munitions factories, heavy defensive works, and especially in our case, naval ships at sea within its radius of action when the Navy may be absent on offensive missions. It is well trained in celestial navigation for operations over water. It can operate effectively by day or night.

Attack aviation is especially designed and equipped for the attack, by machine gun and small bomb, of enemy troops and light defenses. It is the cavalry of the air.

Pursuit aviation is the aerial protector of the other air troops. Its business, and it is so designed and armed, is the destruction of hostile aviation. Its airplanes are small, highly maneuverable, and speedy. Unfortunately it is not very effective at night.

To ensure our supply of pilots, we also necessarily have many airplanes designed for training; and we must have cargo airplanes to rapidly transport the Air Force necessities of maintenance and supply.

Ship for ship, I think, I may assure you that our Air Corps is as well equipped as any in the world today, and with this year's appropriation its material is adequate to meet our peacetime needs.

In point of numbers, our Army and Navy air forces combined rank about fourth in the World's air forces.

Aviation still has one great enemy—bad weather. There still are days when it is blind and cannot work to military advantage. It is getting more and more dependent on extensively prepared airdromes. It is helpless on the ground and its airdromes must have the constant coverage and protection of other troops.

For ground operations, as I said, we must have a quota of comparatively fast moving, mobile troops, and the differential in the speed of movement between the horse and the man, when you are trying to maneuver hundreds or thousands of individuals over rough ground under circumstances involving death in large quantities is just as important as it ever was. We cannot neglect our CAV-ALRY. The day of the lance, saber and cuirass is gone. But American cavalry never favored them much anyhow. Today it is armed with the same semi-automatic rifle, and the same machine guns as the infantryman. Indeed, it also has in quantity, a light air-cooled machine gun that adds tremendous fire-power. It has the peculiar adaptability of its pack horses to keep a large supply of ammunition up to its guns. It has a close assault weapon perhaps superior to the bayonet, but at any rate thoroughly American; each soldier has a 45 caliber automatic pistol. It is organized into regiments, brigades and divisions, like the infantry

and in its larger echelons it is similarly supported by artillery, engineers and other special troops. In rough terrain or in any theatre with poor roads it will be essential. Furthermore, we cannot afford not to use the great national asset of our animal industry which is the envy of many another nation.

However, in the matter of cavalry we have not been asleep. We have realized that the automotive engine has brought us to the point where guns and armor can be rapidly moved long distances and over a fair degree of rough country in some circumstances carry out the mobile missions of war even better than the horseman. We have organized and are rapidly perfecting our mechanized cavalry. We now have one brigade of two regiments supported by its specially equipped field artillery and we expect to expand this unit.

Its backbone is the fast light tank or combat car. This, in quantity, furnishes the offensive power. Machine guns in quantity in cross-country armored carriers furnish the defensive power, and it has specially designed and equipped units for scouting and reconnaissance.

The reconnaissance of cavalry is still essential to supplement that of aviation; its screening ability is necessary to conceal our own movements but above all its rôle is to carry on the mobile combat, on the flank, in the rear, or at a distance to pin the enemy down.

The tank, organized into companies and battalions on its own part has an additional rôle. It is an important and auxiliary of assaulting infantry, as it was in the World War, only it has enormously improved in power, radius, and mechanical reliability. For this purpose we employ both light and medium tanks and the trend is now towards the latter. The very small light tank has not been successful.

The mobile army must contain engineer troops, equipped to enable them to build roads, bridges, railroads, camouflage, accessory defenses, and water supply. They are basically armed as infantry.

The Signal troops operate the most complicated systems of wire and radio communications, reaching from the War Department almost to the front lines, of an army in the field.

One other arm deserves special mention. The Coast Artillery troops man and operate our seacoast artillery, our major caliber anti-aircraft artillery, and, when necessary, mine our harbors.

Our important harbors of strategic importance must be protected, particularly those wherein naval bases are located. Your Navy, despite its power and might and cost, is no good to you unless it can get to sea. Wars have repeatedly shown the ability of a few ships to lock up greater forces in a harbor once they have caught them there by surprise. Our coast artillery armament has the purpose not only of preventing hostile ships from entering our harbors, but of keeping hostile ships far enough off shore so that our own squadrons may debouch from the channel and deploy before battle. As the British fleet learned at the Dardenelles, shore guns are more accurate than naval

guns and they are better protected. To neutralize the heavy shore gun Navies have brought forward the aircraft carrier, which can stand several hundred miles off-shore and release its bombardment planes with high explosive or gas. To our pursuit aviation and anti-aircraft guns falls the lot therefore of protecting the heavy seacoast armament. In anti-aircraft artillery have come some of the most remarkable improvements since the World War. It is really uncanny to watch the fire of a well-directed battery. And these developments are going on apace. We will have to have anti-aircraft protection also for many other localities, installations, and manufacturing plants which are essential to war production and which are in the zone of probable attack. All anti-aircraft equipment now being made is mobile and can easily be moved from place to place.

The Military Academy at West Point is the cradle of the Army. It is not a university as some would have it, but an institution designed to produce a second lieutenant for the Army. Its graduate is a physically fit young man with a good general education particularly on the technical side, but, above all, with a Spartan military character. He can command in the future because he has learned to obey. But he has only barely commenced his military education.

The Army repeatedly is used as the instrument of relief in internal disaster and catastrophe, supplementing and frequently making possible the more effective use of the Red Cross and similar agencies, and binding together as in the case of the last Ohio and Mississippi floods the effort of the municipality, state, and nation.

The Army is big business. It has in its ranks or employs almost every known profession: Doctors and dentists; preachers and lawyers; architects and builders; engineers of every category; financial experts and accountants; office managers and clerks; metallurgists and chemists; airplane pilots and ship's crews; railroad men and motor experts; grave diggers and movie experts.

The Military estimates of the War Department now before Congress are \$459,713,719 for the fiscal year 1939. The Departmental overhead costs \$5,600,387. The Civil Activities are estimated to cost \$157,479,387. We have an expensive military system for the numbers afforded. Nevertheless, it is the system chosen by the American people. We pay our soldiers a wage instead of a conscription pittance. Every sock and shoe, every sack of beans or potatoes, every gun, every airplane, and every round of ammunition is the product of highly paid American labor.

At that, your National Defense as represented by the Army including its Air Corps, and including the supplemental program of the President this year, costs you but \$3.39 per year per capita as against \$10.33 in Great Britain; \$12.73 in France; \$10.88 in Germany; \$16.20 in Italy; and \$6.60 in Russia. In Japan, the normal rate is \$5.69; including the China incident, it is estimated to be \$21.86.

Our business is to give to the nation for its money the most National Defense under the existing system that we can, and to improve that system as much as we can under the law.



## German Maneuvers Lesson

(United Services Review—October 14, 1937)

"The chief lesson conveyed by the German Army maneuvers suggests that the defense has at present the upper hand. Repeated heavy attacks by Blue on the Red lines were judged to have failed, with heavy losses. As in the maneuvers in England, some pretty work was accomplished by rapid transport of troops from one flank to another. Germany—in fact, most countries of the Continent—is favored by Nature with a great variety of country and

plenty of room wherein to carry out maneuvers.

"Moreover, other countries have at their command means to discourage complaints from a civilian population about temporary inconvenience suffered in a cause which others than ourselves have found to be vital."

EDITOR'S NOTE: ANOTHER LESSON:—lack of maneuver space and the use of familiar and localized terrain together with the frequent artificiality of maneuvers often lead to conclusions of questionable value and soundness.





# Crazy Business

## By PETER B. KYNE



### PART IV

Recalling, doubtless, that Theodore Roosevelt had called the cavalry regiment he raised during the Spanish-American War The Rough Riders, in blithe ignorance of the fact that a rough rider has no business in the mounted service, our colonel cast about for a distinctive appellation for his heroes and decided we should be known as The Grizzlies. A picture of *ursus horribilis* appears on the old Bear Flag of California and *ursus horribilis*, it will be recalled, was (for he is now extinct in California) noted for his strength, ferocity and courage. The colonel notified the San Francisco press of his decision and the job was done. Promptly the father of one of our shavetails had a little bronze bear pin designed and two thousand made, which our colonel gladly distributed to his soldiers. I couldn't prevent his giving them to my command, but I could stop the men from wearing them, which I did, on the ground that little bronze bears were not authorized by uniform regulations.

As a result of this modest exhibition of jackassery our regiment arrived in Camp Kearny well advertised and was promptly subjected to much adverse criticism, accused of being high-hat, wealthy and aristocratic. I recalled that in the Spanish-American war days the Astor Battery was so regarded. The creation of this impression was aided and abetted by the great number of high-priced motor cars in our parking area, the property of enlisted men. There must have been a hundred or more automobiles driven down to Camp Kearny from the north by their owners. There was only one motor car in my poor outfit, however, and that was mine. However, everybody rode in it and Private Marchand drove it on all battery errands, even for enlisted men, so we got along. I expected to get killed in France, hence it seemed the part of wisdom to wear the car out before starting for the fields of glory.

One of the first things we did was draw horses and mules from the remount station at Camp Kearny. Some body (I suppose it was our supply officer) drew them for me and they were on my picket line before I even knew they were coming, which annoyed me, because I had hoped to be able to pick my own horse and mule flesh. My lieutenants promptly selected the best saddle animals for themselves, without consulting me and all to the great fury of the outfit—a fury that boiled over in spots when the only horse the enlisted men who knew anything about a horse would trust me to ride was found to be a bony, ugly, heavy-gaited old buggy horse that was amiable enough but not bridle-wise. Snooper could have killed the lieutenants for this exhibition of selfishness and bad mili-

tary taste and begged me to rank my ex-football hero out of his horse, which was the best in the outfit. However, this horse did not suit me and moreover I had been witnessing too many exhibitions of rank consciousness of late. Consequently I said we'd take my crow-bait back to the remount station and trade him in; surely, out of four thousand horses, I could pick a good one. So I sent the animal back one afternoon and ordered Marchand to be ready with the car at nine o'clock next morning to drive me to remount.

When I got to my five passenger car I found a duty sergeant and four privates—all ex-cow punchers—waiting to go down with me. Snooper was too busy with the payroll or something to go himself but had sent this committee to make certain the Remount fellows didn't swindle me, for was I not a poor innocent trusting author that even a child could swindle? Well, they all piled in and the sergeant had a gunny sack in which reposed his stock saddle, bridle and riata. He looked with a jaundiced eye on the McClellan saddle when it came to topping a strange horse. I was amused and a little touched at this evidence of the protective spirit of my men.

Well, we milled horses around and around and finally I picked on a big gray with a nice springy walk and trot and wide action with white spots on both withers, infallible evidence of ancient saddle galls. So I picked up the sergeant's riata and shook me out a loop and dabbed that gray as he ran past.

Instantly five men took the name of the Lord in vain and the sergeant said: "Why, damn it, that's the very horse we picked for you!" They all felt a little small and useless just then. So we led the gray home behind my car and that day he was clipped and shod and emerged a thing of beauty. When he was ready to be tried out I placed a McClellan saddle on him, but the sergeant indignantly snatched it off and forbade me to risk my life in that goddamned saddle on a strange horse until he had first topped the brute. So he put his stock saddle on and gave the gray a try-out and lo, the horse was perfectly reined and gentle and thereupon the sergeant gave his permission for me to mount, and I set forth for a ride, with one of the ex-cowboys following to look after me.

We hadn't gone far until the gray put his head between his knees and shook it violently. He did this several times and then threw his hind end aloft, but without noticeable animus. He was trying his best to tell me the cheek-straps of the bridle were too tight and pulled the corners of his mouth up; that he didn't care for a snaffle and bridoon. However, not having had anything to do

with horses for ten years I ascertained his broad hints to an ebullience of spirits due to having been in the remount corrals too long. However, just to play safe, I got set for a ride—and suddenly he squealed. I knew he was saying then: "You fat fool, watch me stack you!" And I thought "If I can stay twenty seconds he'll quit pitching and start running and there's only fifty thousand acres of flat country for him to run in."

He fooled me. He stayed in one spot and bucked in circles and there was nobody to fire a pistol and send the pick-up men in to pull me off. The ex-cowboy promptly tried, but he was riding a green horse so he had to wait until the pin-wheel activities of my mount ceased, which they did in about twenty-four hours. He stood trembling under me and I thought I had better step off while I still appeared to be in one piece. So I slid off over his withers and half way down he got out from under me and I sat down hard and watched him high-tail it back to the barn . . . later I discovered why I thought I had lost a leg. I had my pipe in my right rear trousers pocket.

Meanwhile, in protest, doubtless, to the hazing around he had been receiving in an effort to effect a pick-up job, the soldier's mount started a riot of his own, so as I sat there I was treated to a very good show in return for the one I had given the soldier. The soldier had had two ribs broken the day before when a horse he was breaking took him into the barn and threw him up against the eaves, so I knew he could not stick it. As he came down, all spread out like a starfish and lit in a sage bush he yelled at me angrily: "Why the hell didn't you tell us you could ride? You let us make damned fools of ourselves over you."

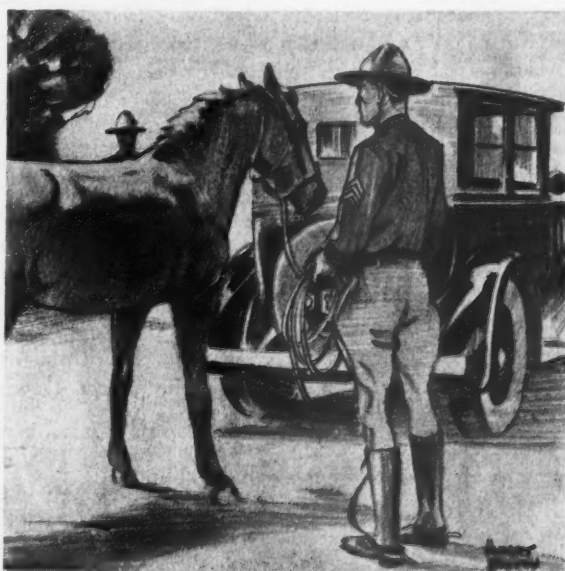
At that moment we weren't in the army. We were out on a cattle range and a wrathful puncher was cussing out a dude who had betrayed his finer sensibilities. I lay over and laughed at him, which made him angrier, for this is what happens to a man who has just been badly frightened. I was the battery commander but I had to pay for his fright. When he was calmer he declared the horse had pitched fully a minute and that I had ridden him "straight up" with one arm free. "Well," I replied, "that was the way all the best authorities rode them where I was raised. I was topping colts for my old man when I was fourteen, although the last rough ride I had was sixteen years ago when I spent a two weeks vacation helping the 6th Cavalry break Nevada remounts in the sand near the Presidio beach." "This," he replied, "will kill that sergeant. We didn't even expect the double-cross when you roped that horse out of the herd."

When my horse came in without me there was hell to pay. Marchand cursed the sergeant for a know-nothing and the sergeant howled: "Get the skipper's car, you runt, and we'll go looking for him." The stable sergeant grabbed the horse and saw at a glance what had driven the animal crazy. "This," he declared, "is what a man who has been raised with thoroughbreds gets when he trusts a lot of cow-punchers that have been raised with kangaroos. If the captain is dead I'm responsible."

This stable sergeant was a Kentuckian from the blue

grass country and as splendid a horseman as I have ever known—and I've hired some good ones. He was far from being a talkative man until he got on the subject of pedigrees, when, without a flicker of hesitation, he would go right back to any one of the five stallions and the forty-three mares that are the foundation of the thoroughbred. When I entered the service a friend of mine, a wholesale hardware dealer, presented me with a huge knife that had a stout scissors, a hook for cleaning out hooves and half a dozen other useful gadgets on it. One wore it at the end of a lanyard and it was so big I couldn't carry it around in my pocket, so I proffered it to First Sergeant Snooper, who examined it and said: "Thank you, sir, but this knife would be as great a nuisance to me as to the captain. However, if the big idea is to make a hit with somebody by presenting him with this monstrosity, I suggest Stable Sergeant Taylor." So I gave the deadly weapon to Taylor and scored a bull's eye. I'll bet he has it yet and if he's lost it he'll talk about it for the remainder of his life. That hoof cleaning gadget made a ten strike with him.

My gray horse never pitched with me again and I was quite in love with him when one day the brigade commander took all the officers of the brigade, from captains up, out for some sort of tactical problem in the hills. I was riding at the tail of the column of twos coming home, when the general started to canter. Instandy my gray decided he belonged at the head of the column with the general, so he started and I couldn't do anything about it. The general was just leading the column down a cow-trail the led into a fourteen foot arroyo about ten feet deep, and up the other side, and the column had just executed right by file, when I came dashing up. There was no room for me to dip into that cow-trail; I had to go into that arroyo or over it and if I went into it there would probably be a funeral. I had done a little jumping over hurdles with my horse but no broad jumping, but I



"So we led the gray horse behind my car"

gathered him now and with a whoop of genuine terror I lifted him over it. He lit with room to spare and pulled in sociably alongside the brigadier who promptly shouted: "Kyne, get off that mad brute before he kills you."

So here was the general exhibiting his secret conviction that an author shouldn't be entrusted with any equine larger than a Welch pony! I tried to defend my horsemanship and my gallant horse, but the general cried me down and made me get off and walk and lead my horse and ordered me never to ride him again. So I gave him to my instrument sergeant, who was delighted, and once more I descended upon the Remount people and this time I got me an iron-gray that weighed about nine hundred pounds. He might have been ridden once but I doubt it, for we had to throw him to shoe him, not having any mechanical appliances for holding a refractory horse for the operation. When we clipped his long winter coat, lo, he was an Arab or I was a Chinaman. The horse jury positively forbade my mounting him and the sergeant took him in hand for a week and then turned him over to a private he could trust.

I have never seen a horse break so quickly; he had a lovely mouth and lovely gaits, reined beautifully in a month and would stop like a shot or leap into a gallop from a halt. Best of all he could jump like a greyhound. Well, we had a polo team in our regiment, and a mighty good one, too—or at least we would have had a mighty good one if the brigade commander didn't insist on playing on it, although what he lacked in skill he made up in eagerness, for the game. We had majors by this time and my major, who played on our polo team, spotted my Arab for a polo prospect and began nosing around.

One night the private who was training the horse came to my tent and was weeping with rage. The major, he informed me, was going to rank me out of my horse and be damned if he (the private) would stand for it. No, sir, by God, if that major took my horse away from me he'd kill the major. I told him that while I was grateful for his loyalty he was to turn the horse over to the major if the latter ordered him to and he left, vowing some sort of back-fire.

He pulled it off next day. We were on the target range and about to fire our first barrage, when the private rode out on my horse and pulled up in rear of twelve three-inch guns. A little to one side stood another major's Pierce Arrow 66, a huge car. I noticed my horse was sweaty and nervous judging by the manner in which the major looked at the animal, I knew I was afoot again . . . the guns went off and my horse squealed, reared, whirled, dashed straight at the Pierce Arrow and leaped over the bonnet. Down the field he went, pitching madly, a runaway.

The major turned to me. "Kyne," he said, "if you ever ride that horse again you're a fool. He'll kill you."

"Hell's fire," I said, "I'm disappointed. I was having him trained for you for a polo mount."

"Keep him," he replied. "I wouldn't ride him on a bet."

That night after retreat I sent for the master of the

horse and said: "Son, what sort of hell were you up to at the guns this afternoon?"

"I put on a show, sir. What did the major say?"

I told him the major was cured of his unholy desire and this was glad news. "I had the poor little fellow cinched so tight he could hardly breathe," this enlisted crook went on to inform me, "and that will make even such a sweet tempered horse as the captain's irritable and angry. And I hazed him around all the way out to the target range. You might have noticed I kept him with his off side to the major while standing in back of the guns waiting for the barrage to start?"

"Yes, but this horse doesn't mind artillery fire. He's stood tied to the breeze back of the guns before today."

"I had a big Mexican spur in my near foot and when the guns went off I reached up and hooked the horse in the shoulder and snatched him around. I figured his blue-blood had stood about all he was going to stand that day and I was right. He went high, wide and handsome, although that leap over the bonnet of the auto was entirely his own idea."

So we were happy again and I rode the horse and the major kept on warning me I'd rue the day. I did. I was mincing across the parade ground on my beautiful Arab one day when I met the brigade commander, who had an eye for a horse. So he pulled up and said: "That's rather a nice animal you're riding, Captain Kyne. I hope he's better broken than that last horse you had."

"He's gorgeous," I assured the general, and made my horse do his stuff. I slid him on his haunches and stopped him from a fast gallop in six feet; I backed him, I swung him, I turned him in circles of which his own length was the diameter.

"Your private mount?" inquired the general.

"Oh, no. I got him out of Remount and one of my soldiers broke him and trained him."

"We'll play polo in a week," said the general, "and I'm very shy on polo mounts. It's foul of me to rank you out of him, but you've got to make a sacrifice for the honor of the brigade. You wouldn't have a civilian team wallop us with their superior mounts, would you?"

"General," I said, "would to God I were standing on your dead body and your soul in heaven."

"Please continue to think well of me," he replied. "After all, the commandant of the school of fire thinks you'll never learn to shoot and has been muttering something about finding a place for you in the infantry. I've killed that idea, but . . ." and he grinned at me.

"I'll send him over to the general's stable," I said with an assumption of cheerfulness I was far from feeling.

"Thank you," he replied, "and be very grateful I do not have you send over with him the enlisted man that trained him. Some folks will tell you I haven't any heart, but you know now I have."

A week later he was made a major general and left us and was gone before I knew about it. I fled to the brigade adjutant and begged to have my horse back but was refused.



What to do? Well, what every captain in our division had to do after he'd had something well-trained and saw it taken away from him. Start all over again. This time I got a big bay single-footer, an old cow-horse, too, and one day he gave me a rough ride when I opened a blue print map while sitting on him! I knew better, but I forgot. This horse was a swimmer. On Saturdays I used to have him ridden by the soldier out to the house at Del Mar, fifteen miles up the coast, where my family lived. I would mount him bareback in my bathing suit and all he'd have on would be headstall and halter-shank. The fool would try to swim to China with me if I asked him. I'd slide off and hang to his mane or his tail and guide him by throwing water at his jaws. We'd come ashore and he'd roll in the sand and run back into the waves to wash it off again. He was a grand horse and when I came home from France I went down to Remount and tried to locate him again and buy him, but alas, it was midwinter and his hair was long and I couldn't recognize him.

I was reasonably happy training at Camp Kearny until a friend in human form, returning from France, brought me Field Artillery Notes, No. 1 to No. 7 compiled from the experience of French and British field artillery on the western front, and I saw right away that the stuff we were learning, while all right at the battle of Santiago, would never do in championship company. It was outrageously demoted, and a low melancholy settled upon me. I almost bayed at the moon when the training schedule presently called for training in arm signalling and with little red flags. I knew none of this monkey business was going on in France, because they had discovered that he who stood on a hill and signalled with arms or red flags didn't stay there very long.

One day our commandant of the brigade school of fire got what I still think is tops in stupid ideas. He heard that in France they had artillery observers in airplanes to spot for the field artillery and adjust its fire, so he had a pin-feather cadet aviator from Rockwell Field, near San Diego, fly over in a Jenny plane and land in the field hard by our guns on the target range. And, not caring very much for me and, probably, highly resolved not to weep if I perished, no matter how, he ordered me aloft in that man killer to spot for the battery. I promptly refused, which knocked him to a parade rest. He warned me of the penalty for refusal to obey an order from a superior officer in time of war and I replied: "I know as much about that as you do, but the article in question refers to disobedience of a *legal* order and your order is palpably illegal. I am a battery commander, not an artillery aerial observer, and it's going to take higher authority than you to shift me off my job to something else." He threatened me with a general court, but I stood pat; so after considering the matter a while he told me I did not have to go up. Promptly I told him I'd go up—voluntarily, because I'd always been crazy to have a flight in a plane!

I went up and got on the target in three minutes, but had a difficult time getting that rookie aviator to go up high enough to get out of range of the shells. He had

never heard of a maximum ordinate and didn't know that at a range of three miles shells arch into the sky considerably.

The method of signalling to the battery, in the adjustment of fire, was worthy of the brain that had devised the crazy experiment. I sat in front of the pilot and watched the bursts. If a burst was over and to the right I made an overhand forward motion with my right hand, and immediately the pilot opened his muffler and let out a single blast. If the burst was over and left I used my left hand in the same motion and the pilot let off two blasts of his muffler. If the shot was short and to the right I made a right-handed downthrust, etc. When I wanted to order the customary four hundred yard bound I drove both arms forward in a down-sweeping motion, or straight out to split the bracket. When I got on the target I raised both hands overhead and touched my finger tips together, while the pilot made the appropriate noises with his exhaust. It never seemed to occur to the mental giant who was conducting this silly experiment that with dozens, probably scores of planes roaring around overhead in battle and with thousands of guns and thousands of shells bursting hither and yon the exhaust acrobatics of one motor—but why comment on it? I enjoyed the ride, and it being time for luncheon now, our aviator fellows took off for home. As he circled for altitude something popped and he came down in a long glide like a wounded goose, slithered through the tops of some six foot tall chapparal and came to a halt on his nose. I dashed over to him on horseback and discovered his underpinning was washed out, so I took him to our mess for luncheon.

Those Jenny planes were falling all over the reservation. One Saturday afternoon one sat down on our lieutenant-colonel's tent and a great howl of grief went up from some of my lads when it was discovered the lieutenant colonel wasn't in the tent at the time. They suspected him of not thinking highly of A battery. Something he'd said, I imagine.

Mostly we did squads east and west at Camp Kearny when not shooting. It was pretty terrible on the men, month after month, but a diversion came when the schedule called for training of radio men. Every man that could spell cat at once got himself, at his own expense, a buzzer battery and telegraph key and commenced learning the International Code, because it was such a relief from squads east and west. In no time at all I must have had fifty radio experts in my outfit, but that did not prevent the chief of field artillery from invoking an edict that all battery officers must be radio telegraphers also. Yes, sir, we had to be able to do twenty-five characters a minute—minimum. This was going too far so I resolved not to have anything to do with radio telegraphy. The commandant of the brigade school of fire, who always suspected me of the worst, would look in at my tent about once a week and demand an accounting of my radio progress, which he never got. Finally I told him plainly that if I got benzed for it I'd be damned if I'd learn radio telegraphy; that I was a battery commander, that I'd have all I could do to

shoot my guns and administer my battery without doing an enlisted man's job, too; that I had fifty or sixty enlisted men who could do thirty-five characters a minute and one lad could do fifty. The hell with it. When he warned me solemnly that I could never enter the school of fire for field artillery at Fort Sill unless I learned radio, I resolved not to enter the Fort Sill institution. Pilgrims returning to the regiment from Fort Sill did not appear to know any more than when they started and were unanimous in declaring it was not a school of fire but a school of terror. Eventually I was ordered there anyhow—arriving on a Saturday. On Monday I went up for my entrance examination and lo, that very day, radio telegraphy was dropped as a prerequisite to matriculation.

I had a one-man intelligence section in my battery and it functioned very well—so well that I knew in advance just who meditated mischief, when and how and so was enabled to block it. Often on dark nights I used to wander up and down the battery streets and listen to my care-free bucks discussing me, not infrequently to my demerit. On such occasions I used to long to stick my nose in the tent and murmur sweetly—"The hell you say." However, I always managed to remember in time that I must maintain my dignity of an officer and a gentleman. Once, at Bassens, near Bordeaux, I listened to an engineer captain in charge of a gang of negro stevedores unloading a vessel. He stood on deck and leaned down over the hatch coaming, and howled to the black gang below such a stream of profanity as no mule-skinner could ever hope to equal. He was an Irishman and in civil life had been a stevedore foreman at the Bush Terminal in Brooklyn. He had four days growth of red beard and his blouse was open and he was foul with dust and sweat. Finally, ceasing his objurgations for lack of breath, he straightened up and beheld me gazing at him in rapt wonder. "Be gob," he shouted, "I curse the day they made an officer an' a gentleman out av me. It shtops me from goin' down there an' knockin' the brains out av half a dozen ab thim naygurs."

I told him I understood thoroughly and that he had my sympathy.

As a result of my one-man intelligence unit and my own nocturnal prowling, I discovered I had a reputation for super-sagacity and was known as Peter The Fox. I also discovered that my lieutenants still strongly disapproved of me and discussed me to my demerit with the enlisted men; that one of them was a bully whom the entire battery yearned to kill with a dull ax. All this was the result of my own investigation, since, of course, I could not discuss my officers with any enlisted man. I had the principal offender up and rawhided him, but failed to cure him. He was pretty terrible. Also my late cadet lieutenant was still with me. I had implored the colonel to move him to some other outfit, but none of the other captains wanted him. He was an industrious young fellow and did what he was told to do as well as he knew how, but he lacked the temperament of an officer and so he was miscast.

After discovering the colonel did not intend to get rid of him, as a menace to my discipline, I called on the bri-

gade commander one day and laid bare by bleeding heart. And within a week I got action. The young man was sent back into the Middle West to make a study of something called a quad truck, and I never got him back again.

The brigade commander next got an idea that the war would be static to the end so he resolved to train us in digging what they called—God knows why—French gun pits. I was told off to build two and camouflage them, my own taste and ideas as to camouflage to govern. After I got down into the red soil of Camp Kearny four inches I ran into cement gravel or conglomerate, which is natural concrete. Our drills and picks would be blunt in half an hour and the commandant of the school of fire would come along and ride me because I wasn't making more than a couple of inches a day. And we only had one forge in my battery to sharpen the picks and drills and we had to do that at night because the horseshoers were busy with it all day. In that terrain shoes wore out very fast. I asked for dynamite and got a few sticks, but before I could use it some other outfit stole it.

We were a month getting down eighteen inches and then I quit and decided to build up. We had to have timber for bursting courses to lay on top, so our French instructors informed us and the inability to get these timbers out of Uncle Sam had our brigadier's reason tottering on it's throne, until a friend of mine, who was a high official of the Santa Fe lines, harkened to an appeal and sent us down a gift of a carload of super-annuated railroad ties.

Finally I had my two alleged gun pits built according to specifications and camouflaged with native grasses and shrubs. I was proud of my job. You could stand off from those two gun pits one hundred yards and never know they were there. One day a plane lit hard by and I went over and asked the pilot to take me up 5,000 feet so I could look down on my gun pits. So he took me up and I looked down on what loomed up like twin Ararats! I did not remark on this to the commandant of the school of fire, however, on the principal that what people do not know will never bother them. And I got an A on my gunpits—the only A I ever got in the army.

We also had a course in tunneling and underground timbering, and one of our majors, who had been a mining engineer in civil life, was told off to lecture to us on underground timbering. I believe the only mine he ever man-aged was a quartz mine that didn't require any timbering so he knew very little of his subject. Fortunately he made the acquaintance of my instrument sergeant who had spent his life gophering in wet underground placer channels and was a mining engineer also, so that night the instrument sergeant informed me he was going to lecture privately to the lecturer on underground timbering, who would, the following night, lecture on the same subject to the brigade. I went down and stood in front of the major's tent in the dark and listened to it. I tried to induce my instrument sergeant to give the major some wrong steers, but the man was honest and refused.

Our tunneling was a success, being in a formation of



decomposed granite which requires no umbering, but during the operation some skunk stole all my picks and shovels and crow-bars. Naturally I stole them back and his with them. It was a gay life.

We had pistol practice and I discovered I would be hard put to it to hit a barn at fifty paces with the .45 automatic, albeit better than a good shot with a single-action Colt forty-five. So again I was disgraced.

About this time it was discovered that we had room for a lot more lieutenants and could nominate sergeants for these vacancies. I nominated two—and a few days later the colonel strolled in on me to demand why I had not recommended First Sergeant Snooper for a commission. I didn't like to tell him that Snooper was a Blue Bird and had all of an old regular nom com's contempt for a commission. I said I didn't think Snooper cared to be an officer so I had not asked him. The old man then berated me for a lack of loyalty to—Snooper and the regiment. "First Sergeant Snooper is the best lieutenant material in the regiment," he informed me. "You are very unfair to him. It has remained for me to discover the man."

I replied: "You never discovered anything and Snooper would much rather enjoy the power and glory of being my first sergeant than a something or other to the colonel."

He ordered me to nominate Snooper, but Snooper objected, fearing busybodies in Washington might get digging into the archives and discover he'd been A.W.O.L., from the 5th cavalry for several years, but I assured him the war would be over and he gumming his food long before they got around to that. His wife wanted him to be a second lieutenant so, with many a misgiving, he agreed to the promotion, but only on one condition. I must have the colonel's word of honor as an officer and a gentleman that, so long as he, the colonel, remained in command of the regiment, Snooper should never be removed from Battery A and furthermore he must be assigned to his old battery upon being commissioned. Snooper knew as well as I did that, ordinarily, it is not good military business to assign an officer to a battery where he had been an enlisted man, but I had no fear in the case of Snooper. Nobody would ever get familiar with that lad. He was a soldier. So the colonel gave me his word of honor and Snooper became one of my second lieutenants—the first and only one I had had thus far. I gave him charge of the paper work of the battery office, so in reality, there was no change. He just took over most of my job and broke in his successor and so well did he do this that the successor developed into such a crackerjack I sent him away to an officer's training camp and put the old ex-cowpuncher sergeant in as top. So Snooper educated the cowpuncher and made a crackerjack out of HIM also!

It was decided now to have a practice march, so we took ten days rations and forage in forage wagons and away we went. It was horrible. The colonel insisted on having as many mounted men as possible, so all the battery commander's details had to fall in. The colonel rode in front and the mounted men followed. Behind them came the wheeled transport and behind the transport the foot troops

marched in an impenetrable dust cloud and cursed and would not be comforted.

A mile south of the town of Oceanside the colonel halted his caravan which resembled Pancho Villa's army. Three trucks were now unloaded of their barrack bags and other impediments to get at the standards because nobody could remember which truck they had been loaded into. We also got out the instruments, formed up the band, uncased the flags and marched gallantly into town. Upon arriving in Oceanside we camped on the beach for the week-end and I could stand it no longer. So I had a telegram sent to me, imploring me to come up to Hollywood and part with a motion picture right for a great deal of money. The colonel was sour on me and did not want to let me go up to Hollywood, but finally yielded in the face of so much stage money. So I went up to Hollywood and got soused. Yes, gentlemen, soused. I would have liked to have stayed soused for the duration of the war, but alas, I had to come back on Tuesday. I picked up the outfit again farther south and we went down to San Diego and camped on a mesa overlooking a deep cañon, with brushy slopes and bottom. Hundreds of civilians came out to gape at us so the colonel decided to show them just what would happen in case of a gas attack. So he gathered a lot of soldiers, armed them with dozens of gas bombs and told them to gas the troops.

Now, the good colonel had never taken the gas course so he did not know that with a heavy fog over a camp at night nobody but a German would lay down a gas barrage. The concentration was pretty thick before the men got their masks out and on, they not expecting such a dirty deal on a practice march and particularly on a foggy Sunday night. Still, it would not have been so bad if the horses and mules on the picket lines hadn't gotten a good gassing, too. With loud and fretful whinnies and brays they pulled the picket lines up by the roots and, dragging it after them, plunged wildly and blindly down the hillside into the cañon, where they fell over each other and got snarled up in the picket lines and there was all hell to pay and no pitch hot, with blinded, weeping, cursing, maddened enlisted men and officers working all night to untangle them and get them back up the hill. My stable-sergeant Taylor had a lot of cuts and abrasions to work on next day. Fortunately, I was not present at this catastrophe, having decided, with a pal of mine, to go down into the city where I knew a restaurateur who would have cut off his right hand before denying me a drink, albeit this was contrary to the law.

When we came back to Camp Kearny we had three days rations left and I was ordered to turn these rations in to the supply officer. I didn't see why I should rob my men, so I held on to the rations and two months later packed them in our accompanying baggage when we went to France; on a day when the remainder of the regiment was starving my lads stole some old railroad ties in the yards at Clermont-Ferrand and feasted on baked beans, corned Willie, pilot bread, coffee and canned peaches. When my brother officers came swarming up to ascertain how come, I replied: "You have to have been an old buck in a former

war, mes enfants. A buck quickly learns to get interested in his internal economy, and thinks of practically nothing else but food. I'm an old buck, so I provided for this months ago."

For a long time my heart had been periodically broken by raids made upon me for men to fill casualty gaps in France. One day they'd want a tinker, another day a horseshoer, another day three motor mechanics, another day a stenographer, another day six cannoneers, etc. Thanks to Snooper's foresight, when making out the personnel cards for divisions headquarters, all of our specialists were camouflaged on the records as fishermen, laborers or sailors. We were pretty strong on fishermen because Snooper said a fisherman was no good in the field artillery. Our good-for-nothings, however, were always just what the division personnel adjutant would be apt to draft so I parted gracefully from those I knew I would never learn to love, and I hope they did well in France, although I have always doubted it.

One day a fourth rate male star of western motion picture for eighty-four men and I was sunk. The other batteries were only assessed twenty-five men each, so I knew favoritism at regimental headquarters was rampant—something I had suspected for quite a while. I demanded a show-down from the colonel and the adjutant and got verbally thrown out of the colonel's office. So Snooper and I went into executive session and slipped to various units in the A.E.F., all of our city Irish. They were too clan-nish. I couldn't get a noncom in the lot.

I knew why I was being discriminated against. I'd been raising hell with our first adjutant who was a decent fellow but, like Julius Caesar, ambitious. I'd file with him for the colonel's favorable endorsement, applications for furloughs for my men and they wouldn't be acted upon, because he'd let them get buried in the unfinished business on his desk while he studied to be a field officer every afternoon at a brigade field officers' school, where they studied tactical problems based on the Battle of Gettysburg.

One day a fourth rate male star of western motion pictures came down to enlist in my battery. He had been a real cowboy once and had recently been proclaimed champion bronco buster of the world. While still a civilian, he met our colonel, who, always on the lookout for celebrities, promptly brought him to the officers' mess for luncheon. I protested at being forced to sit at luncheon with a person who'd be an enlisted man in my battery two hours later, but it got me nowhere. When the man enlisted he reported to me with an order scrawled in pencil on a leaf torn from a scratch pad, assigning him to my battery. I realized the adjutant had not retained a copy of this order, so I filed it and put the man to work and I knew he should have been sent for three weeks to the recruit camp, but who was I to tell an adjutant his business?

A week later I was summoned before the colonel and his adjutant and both were so red and distraught I knew somebody had been man-handling them. They denounced me for taking an enlisted man into my battery without first sending him to the recruit camp. (The adjutant had

forgotten he had officially assigned the man and the colonel didn't know it was his business to send the man to the recruit camp, not mine.) The colonel said he knew I would want this man to help me break horses, so he had asked the division commander to waive the three weeks in the recruit camp and the division commander had agreed and instructed the chief of staff to telephone the C.O. of the recruit camp to send the soldier back to our regiment. The fellow's name was Acord, but the chief of staff got it as Acorn, so they couldn't have found him, anyhow, even if he had been in the recruit camp! And they looked for three days! Then the colonel happened to run into the soldier, discovered I had had him all along, and telephoned the chief of staff to forget it, that I had the soldier who had never been to the recruit camp anyhow! Thereupon the chief of staff blew up and demanded a show-down from the adjutant and rawhided him and then laid the rough edge of his tonus on the colonel. So now they were handing it on to me and I was ordered to go over to the chief of staff, confess error and lift from them the burden of MY infamy.

I was happy to do this for I love being mischievous. I removed the order of assignment from my files, called on the chief of staff, laid it before him and told him the true inwardness of the situation. "Ah," he murmured, "so this is just another evidence of the inefficiency in the office of your regimental adjutant." And he took down the phone and burned the tails off the adjutant and the colonel again and told them why. A few days later we had a new adjutant, a first lieutenant, and he took up the grouch against me bequeathed him by his predecessor.

We now had an excess captain by reason of this change, but—inasmuch as he was a potential field officer—whenever we had a regimental parade he commanded my battalion. He rode a horse that always scoured and insisted that I march too close to that horse for comfort, which I would not do. He also reproved me for passing along to my command the commands he gave. He didn't think that at all necessary, but as he had a weak voice I did, and my lieutenants and noncoms took up the refrain to their respective commands. We had quite a quarrel about this. One day he gave the command "Column right" and turned his filthy horse to the right. However, he neglected to give the command of execution, so I continued on straight ahead, as the leading battery and the second battery followed and when our ambitious battalion commander finally looked up his command was a hundred yards away headed for the mountains. He said it was very unfair of me to treat him that way and I suggested it might be a good idea for him to start learning how to drill a squad before commanding a battalion. Shortly thereafter sickness took him from us, so after that, when we had a parade, the colonel put a first-lieutenant in command of the battalion. I was the senior captain but apparently it was assumed that I yearned to command in a parade, whereas, all I wanted was to be left severely alone.

All this time I was writing on my novel on Wednesday afternoons and evenings when the division had time off,

and Saturday afternoons and until midnight Sunday. I was not making very fast progress but I WAS turning out good copy. Suddenly I went stale, which is an affliction that comes unexpectedly to all authors and lasts an indeterminate period. A stale author is just out of business. He can't think of anything to write about and if he could the writing would be terrible.

I was up a blind alley with my plot. I had broken down after the fourth installment and the first installment had already been printed and the second was in the foundry. The editor prodded me by wire for copy for the artist and I did not answer for the very sound reason that I couldn't promise him anything, so he declared I had brought on him nervous prostration and he was going away to Colorado for two weeks to get over it and for me to cut the novel down to 60,000 words instead of the 100,000 as contracted for and end it so he wouldn't go crazy with the press catching up to us.

Then I went nuts, too, and in my delirium I poured out my soul to the only captain pal I had in the outfit, who, like myself, was an outlaw. He was a whaling big attorney in civil life and a very brilliant man, but lawless. He read the carbon copy of the first sixty thousand words of my novel and said: "Well, what's wrong?" I said: "In this novel I am building a logging railroad. The hero is, in order to save his principality, going to parallel the logging road of the villain. But he has to get a franchise to run over the city streets to tidewater and he has to make a jump crossing with his line over the line of the enemy in order to reach his saw mill with his train loads of logs. And the villain has him stymied. Unless I can make that jump crossing I'm sunk without a trace. They're printing now a novel I can't finish."

"Of course you can finish it," he soothed. "I was the attorney for the Northern Electric Railroad and we had to make a jump crossing of the Southern Pacific tracks and

they had us blocked. But I licked them," and he told me how. Then he went on to plot out the remainder of the novel for me, and his plot was gorgeous. I was stale, but I knew that two days away from the army, two days of uninterrupted sleep, ten grains of calomel to stir up my old tropical liver, and a pint of citrate of magnesia would make a genius out of me again.

I made a battle plan. I had never had a furlough and every officer in my outfit had had two or three. So I resolved to go on furlough for ten days. I planned to sleep two days and write five thousand words a day for eight days. A tough assignment but I had done it before and could do it again. So I made application for a furlough and took it over to the colonel. I expected to have quite an argument with him before securing his favorable endorsement, but to my surprise, he signed without protest, but grinned an evil grin the while. "I'm afraid the brigade commander will not approve this furlough," he advised.

"In that event," I replied, "I'll take it down to him personally."

I did. "Didn't you read the order I promulgated to your regiment last night?" he queried kindly. I said I had not and what was the order and what did it have to do with my furlough? It appeared it had plenty. He had issued an order that no more furloughs were to be granted to officers of my regiment. "And of course," he concluded, "You couldn't possibly expect me to issue such an order yesterday and then make an exception to it today. Kyne, you're out of luck and please do not talk back to me about it. Application denied."

So I saw right away and very clearly that I had to lick a brigadier general and a regular brigadier general at that. He was a tough little guy with a mouth that snapped closed like a cellar door, but, like Achilles, he had one vulnerable spot.

He had a sense of humor!

*To Be Continued*



### Factors Essential to a Successful Army

New means and devices for warfare should be checked against these factors:

1. Ability to obtain and transmit intelligence.
2. Ability to deliver force, either by surprise or by impact.
3. Ability to hold gains.
4. Ability to service troops in the field.

COLONEL HENRY W. MILLER,  
(via United Press).



# Life AND THE CAVALRY LEADER

## *Toujours Security*

By MAJOR E. S. JOHNSTON  
Infantry

A building has, in real-estate language, a certain "life." An automobile, as every motorist knows, also has a span of life, and in our Navy the "life" of a ship—a definite tactical term—is a factor of importance. The life of a cannon is a matter, also, of practical moment, and so is the life of a human being.

Life, in this sense, means the ability to endure, and is one of the four primary characteristics of any element of combat power. The importance of mass derives from the fact that the ability to produce energy of the amount and type needed is fundamental to action of any kind. The importance of position lies in its influence on the use, actual or threatened, of the mass so placed, and in the ability to change position. Susceptibility of control is essential if the movement of mass is to be used to good effect. And life, in the sense of ability to withstand the wasting effects of climate, disease, weather, fatigue, or what not, is the quality without which mass must become ineffective, so that without life there could be nothing to position and nothing to control. It is the ensemble of these characteristics which determines the nature of any agency and the uses to which it can be put. Unless endowed with a certain life, an agency can be put to no use at all.

The inherent life of a man, a unit, or of matériel is critically influenced by the conditions to which it is exposed. An Australian bushman can live where any other human being would perish. A Moro goes on living, and fighting, after many another would be dead of wounds. In certain unhealthy regions, the life of a white man is admittedly short, and in the World War some one estimated the life of a fighting second lieutenant as about six weeks.

In war, the predominating factor in determining the span of life may be related either to the physical conditions of the theater of action or to the effect of hostile activity. As an example of the first sort, there was the influence of the Russian winter which, with some assistance from the Russian Army, put an end to Napoleon's Grand Army during its retreat. As examples of the effect of enemy action, there are disasters like Caporetto or Cannae. All of these, however, dramatic though they are, are merely striking examples of wearing-down effects which go on constantly in campaign. Because of their influence, whether quick or cumulative, the prolongation of the life of combat power is a primary consideration.

Security, which is no more nor less than protection, has precisely this purpose—to prolong useful life. In the ordinary existence of peacetime, this implies protection such as we obtain from our police forces, the medical profession, and pension systems. In war, security includes all

of these, and, more than that, calls for special measures calculated to provide adequate freedom of action for the nation and for its field forces. Proper security in war implies the ability to move, to fight, and to control the maneuver of the protected mass which is to result in victory.<sup>1</sup>

In peace or war, at any moment, and with reference to any act, a certain minimum level of security is essential to effective action of any sort. Each contemplated act demands its own relative degree of security if it is to have any possibility of success. A house-holder will hardly leave his home to visit the corner drugstore unless he can reasonably expect to get there and to get back again in a condition to derive some enjoyment from the tobacco, or whatever it may be, for which he made the journey. Infantry, after one or two experiences, can scarcely be induced to leave its trenches in attack, unless its auxiliaries can assure it a reasonable chance of accomplishing what it sets out to do. An overseas expeditionary force, if it is to arrive overseas, must be assured of a certain minimum level of security en route.

There is an old saying, attributed to John Paul Jones, to the effect that "it seems to be an inescapable law that he who cannot risk cannot win." This is, as another Paul might have said, a true saying, and worthy to be believed; but it can also be fatally misunderstood. Interpreted, as it often is, as justifying unnecessary risks, it may be a solace to foolish little girls who believe in doing "anything once," but in the hands of a soldier or a sailor who has the interests of a nation to serve it is a two-edged weapon of terrible import. History, if it teaches anything, preaches interminably that the soldiers who have served their cause consistently well have been the leaders who took only calculated risks. The risks may often be desperate, and justifiably so, but a justified risk, however desperate, is never an unnecessary hazard.

The true meaning of the old maxim "nothing ventured, nothing gained" is that absolute security, in peace or war, is a rare if not non-existent thing. Every act of our lives involves a certain danger. We must eat to live, and yet a single mouthful can be fatal. Action, however, cannot always wait on certainty of security, and the condition to be sought is a state of security adequate for the purpose to be served. There is scarcely such a thing, for instance, as command of the sea in a literal sense, and literal security can no more be expected in land operations. Security, like everything in our world, is a relative thing—it is not constant, except that it is a constant variable, and a state of

<sup>1</sup>See "Mass and the Cavalry Leader," *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, January-February, 1938.



security appropriate to the operation to be attempted is all that can be expected.

"Guard, move, hit" is an old recipe for effective action, whether in the prize ring or the theater of operations. It is no accident that "Guard" comes first, and it was Napoleon who said that "the whole art of war consists in a well-reasoned and *extremely-circumspect*" (italics supplied) "defensive, followed by a rapid and audacious attack."

Sometimes the rapid and audacious attack will provide its own security. And this, by the way, is an old cavalry tenet, enticing to the mobile soldier because it accords with the speed of his action.<sup>2</sup> Taken without tactical salt, however, this sort of half-baked professional provender is not merely a palling, but an appalling, diet. Not only is it spoiled in the cooking, but it lacks an ingredient without which it is dangerous to the tactical system.

While it is true that security may be favored by offensive measures imperilling the enemy security, it is also true that this method, like any other, has limitations as well as virtues, and that any single method may, according to the situation, be either highly advantageous or completely ruinous. The methodical and cautious attack is as valid a method as the rapid and audacious assault, provided that, like anything else, it is used at the right time and place. The whole secret of developing an effective army, given good men with good equipment, is to teach them when not to do things, as well as when to do them.

Security may be furthered by serious attacks, by threats, by paralysis of the hostile signal system, and by weakening enemy morale through propaganda and surprise. None of these is to be neglected, but the truth remains that defensive measures of security also have their place in the scheme of things. Certainly as long ago as the sixth century, and no doubt long before that, experienced soldiers were reminding the men of their profession that "the defense is more important than the offensive, because he who plans to attack must first provide for his own security." Any offensive against considerable resistance encounters the old problem of attacking without uncovering, of parrying without ceasing to threaten. The idea of security, as our schools constantly remind us, "is basic in every action of war from the time of the first possible contact to the final battle."

Effective as offensive measures may be for purposes of security, they may not in themselves be adequate. The early months of the World War—indeed, the early years—were an era of slaughter because the peace-trained soldiers of Europe had no real conception of the innate limitations of their own means of action when exposed to the effects of hostile means developed since their last great war. This form of professional ignorance, the source of most of the historic surprises which characterize the opening phases of such wars, is to a degree inevitable. Impossible as it is to eliminate such surprise, it can nevertheless be much reduced. But its reduction is a work for cool

and calculating minds, and not for venturesome gamblers. The British Grand Fleet entered the Battle of Jutland with powerful cruisers, strong in gunpower but weak as to protection, and their quick and violent destruction under the fire of the High Seas Fleet, while it did not detract from Sir John Fisher's fame as a gambler, beclouded his reputation for good judgment. The cold shock dealt that day to British aplomb, through the German crews and matériel developed by the unimpassioned genius of von Tirpitz, had an influence in prolonging the war, and British sailors were for perhaps the first time in history hissed on the streets of London because the simple and forthright mind of their old First Sea Lord had overvalued speed and hitting power and undervalued protection.

Defensive security measures are therefore entitled to their due weight, and, dangerous though the word "usually" usually is as to war, it may be said with essential justice that they are usually essential. Such measures include the employment of security detachments, the adoption of measures of readiness as to the main forces, and the utilization of local conditions (ground, night, fog, et al.) for protective purposes. They also include the employment of matériel of a protective nature, whether it be weapons or armor. The old fight between hitting power and protection, including the reappearance of such agencies as gas, smoke, and armor, is being reenacted in intensive form in our day on land as well as sea. He who puts his faith in the idea that "the gun always beats armor" should remember that the race is not yet decided; if it were, millions of treasure would not still be poured out in the manufacture of armor and in the effort to produce better and bigger guns. This fight has been going on from time immemorial, and will go on as long again.

In addition to other defensive security measures, the cultivation of an enduring morale is of prime importance. Even here, however, one factor does not tell the whole story. Men have done wonders—have even won wars—and will again, though possessed of inferior equipment; but, on the other hand, the whole history of the advance of civilization is the story of the triumph of superior armament over strong hearts less well equipped for the fray.

If security is the sine qua non of freedom of action, reconnaissance stands in the same relation to security. The two, as our profession—for good reason—repeats interminably, go hand in hand, because the objective of reconnaissance is accurate information, and information is the basis of security.

But reconnaissance is something more than this. As a method of obtaining information—for there are other such methods, too—it is the basis not only of protection but of all other acts looking to the purposeful use of combat power. Without reasonably good information, the correct objective of the nation and of its armed forces can scarcely be determined, and without reconnaissance the commander can hardly decide upon the proper distribution of his forces and upon the measures for guiding them to their work and holding them to their job until it is done.

As already indicated, there is no mystery as to the fac-

<sup>2</sup>See "Mobility and the Cavalry Leader," CAVALRY JOURNAL, September-October, 1937.

tors that determine the life of combat power; nor is there any question as to those which govern the proper measures to safeguard its life, for they are the same. They are in fact the same factors which influence and determine the outcome of all acts, of all kinds, whether in war or peace. Such factors include all the influences of every kind existing under any set of circumstances, and, numerous though they are, they have been cited, discussed, catalogued, and analyzed since the first man set upon his brother. The problems involved, moreover, are not peculiar to war, except as to the variety of the elements to be dealt with and the special character of some of the agencies employed. The problem of the boxer in the ring is no different fundamentally from that of the Great Captain ringed about by foes. Each in his own world, the pugilist, the policeman, the explorer, or what not, and the soldier can accomplish only what his own means permit, influenced as these means are by those which oppose him and by the conditions under which he must do his fighting. These things and these alone, if he perceives them in their true relationships, will tell him what can be done, at what cost, and with what consequences.

Simple and incontrovertible though this may be, it is not in practice the end of the problem. The old-time religion may rest on the rock of ages, but soldiers are always straying after false gods. Our own doctrine, which by its constant reiteration forms the minds and frames the acts of our fighting men, is not infrequently in conflict with fundamental theory. The human being is quite capable of conceding a fact in theory and then basing his action on some attractive fallacious precept: Precepts of this sort, traps for the unwary, abound in the mass of literature which constitutes our professional doctrine, and one can hardly turn its pages without lighting on one fallacy after another.

In the majority of cases, these fallacies seem to derive from overemphasis on one method at the expense of others. The fundamental fallacy underlying all is that we profess a sound conception of the whole problem and then disregard this concept in practice. We maintain that our doctrine is founded on "principle," but we do not know a principle when we see one. We have a fatal tendency to mistake methods for principles, and to exalt a mere manner of doing things—well enough in its place—into a fundamental truth. We make a basic distinction between principles and methods on the first page—which no one reads, though it is the best page—of our Field Service Regulations,<sup>3</sup> and close our eyes thereafter in practice to this, the first postulate of all our teaching. And yet the solution of our troubles is easy enough. It is actually harder to go wrong than right, *provided* that the fundamental facts are really implanted in our consciousness.

Our FSR tells us, as to security and reconnaissance forces, that they operate according to "different principles," because reconnaissance agencies direct their action with reference to their objectives, whereas security ele-

ments regulate their location and movements with reference to the command to be protected.

Actually, however, there is here no difference of principle. Both reconnaissance and security forces properly regulate their behaviour with reference to their objectives: that is, with reference to their *objectives-in-mind*,<sup>4</sup> which are their aims, objects, or purposes. Since their aims are diverse, so must their actions often be and to the same degree. If the action of reconnaissance elements leads far afield toward distant objectives-in-space,<sup>4</sup> while the action of security forces tends to keep them near the unit which sends them out, this difference is due to the influence of their missions, of their means of action, of the hostile means opposed to them, and of the conditions under which they must operate. The principle is the same in both cases: namely, that the appropriate action varies with the situation. Or, to expand the principle somewhat, the proper action is determined by the objective, by the means available and opposed, and by the conditions in the area of operations, as well as by the consequences as to future action.

Even as to method there is, in fact, no clear-cut difference between the two types of forces. As cavalrymen know, there are times when the best security can be afforded by cutting loose from the element protected and by operating at a distance. There are times, also, when reconnaissance forces can be most useful by staying close to home. It all depends upon the situation.

The most dangerous threat to any force arises from the tendency of its leaders to follow faulty rules of action which obscure the simple fact that the proper thing to do depends upon the situation and upon nothing else. The household rule of taking a cathartic for any and all forms of abdominal complaint has, by rupturing their appendixes, killed more human beings than all the men that have died in many wars. Nowadays, a physician who followed such a rule (if such a doctor can be imagined) would be cast out by his own profession. The military profession, proud of its high standards, can hardly afford more leniency to its own quacks.

Adherence to old-style patterns of security measures is the more dangerous because the triumphant practices of one war may be the source of disaster in the next. The French in 1914 contented themselves with conventional troop distributions too often unadapted to the realities as to the ground and as to the enemy. If the immediate result was a series of disasters, the final outcome has been a searching study and the adoption of other methods. It will be interesting to observe, in the next great war, whether this study has rendered the French ready for their next trial, or whether it has merely prepared them magnificently for an impossible recurrence of the war of 1914.

The fundamental mission of cavalry in its character as a security and reconnaissance agency gives these problems their special importance to the cavalry leader. He must be ready to meet new perplexities, not because the problems

<sup>3</sup>FSR, 1923, page iii.

<sup>4</sup>See "The Objective and the Cavalry Leader," *CAVALRY JOURNAL* November-December, 1937.

are fundamentally new, but because they involve new means of action which are not yet tested by war. Basically the new problems are as old as mankind, but the new armament, the new armor, and the new transport will lead to new methods of doing old things.

Like the physician who weighs in his mind the inward significance of all the outward symptoms, so that he may focus effort upon their cause, the commander must have a thorough practical knowledge of his subject. He must know the capabilities of his means of action and must ap-

preciate their limitations under the actual conditions as imposed by the enemy and by the area in which he does his work. His problem is the more difficult because he cannot have the physician's physical equipment; invention cannot supply him with an X-ray to pierce the outward covering of things into the recesses where events really have their source. He must, therefore, develop his own X-ray eyes so that, prepared to win his first fight, he can, while winning that, learn how to win the next one also.

## First Squadron, 3rd Cavalry Marches

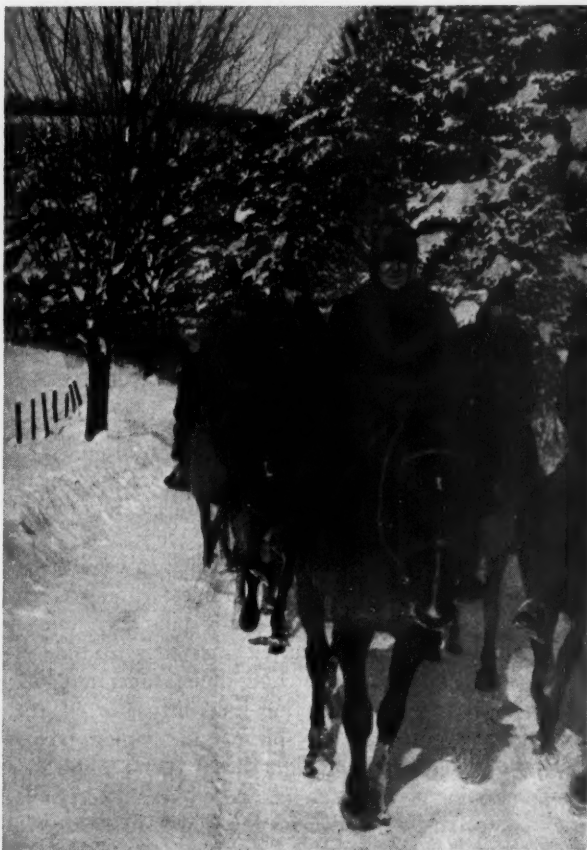
Flash! "MARCH WEATHER RECORD BROKEN.

Temperature of 24 Degrees Below Zero at 6:30 o'clock Yesterday Morning Climaxes Shivering Night." (The Burlington, Vt., *Free Press and Times*, March 5, 1938.)

This was the day selected by Lieutenant Colonel Thomas H. Rees, Squadron Commander for a test march of thirty-two miles, from Fort Ethan Allen to the target range at Underhill, and return. The squadron left at 8 o'clock in the morning when the temperature in Burlington was given officially at 11 degrees below zero.

The command reached the target range, without incident, after a march of two and a half hours. Upon arrival the temperature was estimated as being about 18 degrees below zero. Ice on the creek was broken in order to water horses. After grooming and a hot meal, the return march to the post was knocked off in two and a quarter hours.

On the frontispiece of the last July-August number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, Cavalry is depicted as being able to perform its mission in darkness, mud, woods and under all abnormal conditions and circumstances. *Look at the pictures.*



Left—Lieutenant Colonel Thomas H. Rees leads the First Squadron, 3rd Cavalry through the woods of Vermont.  
Right—They can take it.



# Care and Maintenance of Motor Vehicles of the Cavalry Regiment (Horse)

By CAPTAIN H. H. D. HEIBERG, Cavalry

With the advent of scout cars and motor transportation in the Cavalry Regiment (Horse), the cavalryman is presented with a new problem in care and maintenance. The mass of regulations and blank forms, new terms and equipment are so confusing that the responsible officers do not know what they can or can not do to these vehicles, or how to do it. The Headquarters Troop commander, already inoculated against peculiar looking gadgets by his exposure to the communications platoon, usually signs for everything that comes in and turns it over to his Transportation Platoon commander (if any) or his motor sergeant to use as he sees fit.

This motor equipment according to the Cavalry Table of Basic Allowances, June 1, 1937, includes for peacetime issue:

- 6 Scout cars.
- 3 Motorcycles, solo.
- 5 Motorcycles, w/sidecar.
- 17 Trucks, medium, 1½ ton.
- 2 Trucks-tractor, 1½-ton, w/Semi-trailers, 4½-ton.
- 1 Truck, reconnaissance, 8 passenger.

Tools and spare parts.

Considerably more is prescribed for mobilization.

Most of us have cars of our own which represent one of our largest single investments. But surprisingly little care is taken of this expensive piece of machinery. We put gas, oil and water into it, to be sure, but how many of us follow out all the details of care and maintenance outlined in the carefully prepared instruction manual supplied by the manufacturer? If we are this careless of our own automobiles, how can we expect a private soldier to get very enthused over the maintenance of a government vehicle which he may be assigned to operate for a time?

You may say that in spite of all this neglect we get excellent service from our automobiles, which is true, thanks to the constant efforts of the designer and manufacturer. Your car, however, is generally operated over good, hard-surface roads while the tactical vehicle is called upon to operate on poor roads and cross country, under severe conditions of dust, sand, mud and weather.

A slight personal inconvenience and delay is suffered by the mechanical failure of your car. But *the success of an operation is imperiled if the tactical motor equipment fails!* It is therefore imperative that military motor equipment be kept constantly fit for extended field service. This is no new doctrine. The cavalry prides itself on its care of animals, arms and equipment. It must learn to take equally fine care of its vehicles.

## MAINTENANCE

Pertinent regulations<sup>1</sup> assign the responsibilities of maintenance as follows:

"Automotive maintenance may be, and generally is, broken down into several phases or echelons. The using arms and services are responsible for those phases or echelons of maintenance which include all phases of preventive maintenance and such simple repairs and replacements as may be accomplished by an organization, within the limits of time available, with its own personnel and with the tools and spare parts authorized and issued to the organization. All other phases or echelons of maintenance are functions of the services."

Preventive maintenance is the intelligent operation, care and inspection of a vehicle with a view to preventing breakdown; the making of adjustments and correcting of minor troubles before they can grow into serious faults requiring major overhaul or replacement. Its objective is *efficient, economical transportation*.

The other class of maintenance has to do with the correction of defects which preventive maintenance has failed to forestall.

The organization commander's responsibility of maintenance, defined above, and called Operating Maintenance, may be classified as *caretaking, adjustment, lubrication, repair and replacement*, and *inspection*. It involves the so-called First and Second Echelons of Maintenance.

## FIRST ECHELON MAINTENANCE

The First Echelon of Maintenance is the caretaking phase which is accomplished by the driver and is the most important element of preventive maintenance. In general it comprises the following: Intelligent and careful driving; cleaning; tightening loose nuts, bolts, screws and studs; servicing (replacement of fuel, oil, water in cooling system and battery, antifreeze, air in tires, etc.); replacement of missing nuts, bolts, screws, cotter pins, etc.; care of tools and equipment of vehicle; emergency roadside repairs and adjustments (patching inner tube, plugging leaks in cooling system, taping leaks in gas or oil line, taping worn insulation or splicing and taping broken electrical wires, replacing light bulbs, spark plugs and fuses, cleaning of screens in gas and oil lines if accessible, tightening fan belt, and loosening brakes in emergency only).

<sup>1</sup>B.F.M., Vol. V, Part Two, Motors and Motor Transport, Paragraph 9 b.



## DRIVERS

The first step in the efficient operation of motor equipment is the selection of drivers. Generally they should be young, intelligent, energetic and interested in their prospective work. Youth is important as improper driving habits are more easily corrected and reactions to emergencies are quicker than in older men. Intelligence, energy and interest are essential to proper care of their vehicle. Having selected a likely group of prospects, they should be put through a thorough course of driving, individual and collective, on the roads and cross country under *qualified* supervision. Concurrently with the driving instruction a thorough course in First Echelon Maintenance should be conducted, including practice in making out the various forms and reports required of the driver (of which more later). Great care should be exercised in the selection of instructors because there are surprisingly few really good drivers.

These courses should last from two weeks to a month at the completion of which qualified students should receive their Motor Vehicle Operator's Permit (Q.M.C. Form 228) and be assigned a vehicle. Each vehicle should be permanently assigned to a driver as should an assistant driver, and that vehicle *should not be operated* unless one of these men is present. Likewise, whenever a vehicle goes to the Second Echelon Shop it should be accompanied by its driver or the assistant, who should help in the work on that vehicle. In this way the driver's knowledge and skill, as well as his sense of responsibility and pride in his vehicle is increased. It is preferable, when possible, to assign these newly qualified drivers as assistants to experienced drivers before giving them their own vehicles. Drivers should be promptly relieved for cause and their operator's permits revoked.

## SECOND ECHELON MAINTENANCE

The Second Echelon of Maintenance embraces the adjustment, lubrication, repair and replacement phase, and this is performed by the maintenance personnel of the organization. This is subdivided into *Scheduled Maintenance*, which is that periodic lubrication and adjustment that is called for in the manufacturer's instruction manual, and performed at definite intervals of mileage or operating hours; and *Repair and Replacement Maintenance* which may be necessitated at any time because of wear, accident or neglect. Scheduled maintenance can be anticipated and should be staggered throughout the organization to prevent too many vehicles coming up for this work at the same time, with the resultant danger of slighting some work.

## PERSONNEL

The maintenance personnel of the Headquarters Troop, Cavalry Regiment (Horse) is shown below according to War Strength Tables (424 T, July 1, 1936), since Peace Strength Tables are being revised. Men marked with an asterisk are considered essential to Peace Time maintenance.

\*1 Technical Sergeant, Motor, who is the shop foreman. His duties are supervisory; he receives the driver's reports, determines when work is to be done, what work to do, supervises the work and checks the results. He is responsible for keeping the vehicle records.

1 Sergeant, Motor Maintenance, who is the chief mechanic. He assigns jobs to the mechanics, supervises their work and assists them where his superior knowledge and skill are needed. When the work demands he takes over a repair job himself.

\*1 Private, Specialist, 3d Class, Mechanic }  
1 Private, Specialist, 4th Class, Mechanic }, who are the chief mechanic's assistants. They perform the technical repairs and any work that needs special skill.

Men for these four positions are not generally available in any organization—they must be carefully selected and trained. The local motor transport and Ordnance shops might be prevailed upon to train them to start, but they should be sent for a thorough course to one of the service schools as soon as practicable.

(1\*) 2 Privates, Specialist, 5th Class, Mechanics, who may be classed as apprentices and when teamed with the Privates, Specialist, 3d and 4th Class Mechanics, form crews that can work on two jobs simultaneously.

\*1 Private, Specialist, 6th Class, Mechanic, is also in the apprentice stage and is generally used as the shop helper; cleaning assemblies, carrying tools, spare parts, grease, oil, and otherwise helping the crews. In an emergency the Motor Maintenance Sergeant and this mechanic can team to make a third repair crew.

The last three mechanics listed might well be trained in your own shops, though as the opportunities arise, they should be sent to schools to fit them for replacing the skilled men.

## EQUIPMENT

The scope of the second echelon maintenance is defined as "such simple repairs and replacements as may be accomplished by an organization, within the limits of time available, with its own personnel and with the tools and spare parts authorized and issued to the organization."

The Quartermaster Corps has recently revised the list of "Equipment, Unit, for Light Repairs" and these new sets are now being issued to organizations, piecemeal, as the different components become available. By analyzing this list we can get a fair idea of the extent of repair work expected of the using arms. Cavalry Table of Basic Allowances, June 1, 1937 prescribes the following for Horse Regiments:

1 Unit Equipment Set No. 2, these are very extensive sets that come in sturdy steel cabinets about 30" square and 33" high with heavy wooden bench tops. They include:

General equipment.  
Engine equipment.  
Motorcycle equipment.

Wheel alignment equipment.  
 Brake repair equipment.  
 Lubricating equipment.  
 Sheet metal and radiator equipment.  
 Ignition and carburetor equipment.  
 Tire equipment.  
 Battery equipment.  
 Woodworking equipment.  
 Machinist equipment (calipers and dividers only).

- 1 Unit Equipment Set No. 3, which is the Air Equipment Set, includes:

Gasoline driven compressor.  
 Hose.  
 Chunk-gauge (for tires).  
 Air-driven grease gun.  
 Spray.

- 1 Unit Equipment Set No. 4, which is the Block and Tackle Set, includes:

Double and single blocks.  
 300 feet of 1" manila rope.

- 1 Unit Equipment Set No. 7, which is a wrecking set to be installed on the maintenance truck, includes:

Crane.  
 Chain hoist.  
 Towing bar.

- 1 Motor Vehicle Mechanics Set for each mechanic.

These are very complete hand tool sets.

With these tools and equipment it is possible to do practically every job of automotive repair except those requiring machine tools, such as reboring cylinder, line reaming main and camshaft bearings and jobs requiring a lathe, press or a welding outfit.

Though the tools may be available, work should not be attempted that is beyond the abilities of the personnel, and all work that can be more expeditiously and economically performed by the higher echelons (Quartermaster and Ordnance Repair Units) should be turned over to them.

### INSPECTION

The inspection phase is very important to proper maintenance. This involves inspections by the unit commander, platoon commanders, section leaders and squad leaders to insure that all phases of care and maintenance are properly performed. Army Regulations require that a second echelon technical inspection by a qualified officer be made of every vehicle in operation, once each month or every 1,000 miles, whichever comes first. Section and squad leaders should inspect their vehicles daily, both before and after operation, to insure that the driver is performing his 1st Echelon Maintenance. The Technical Sergeant, Motor, should check each vehicle with the drive at the end of the day's operation and order any vehicle in need of repairs or periodic servicing, into the shop. Platoon leaders should make a general inspection of their vehicles each day they are operated. They should make sure that sufficient time is allowed to warm up engines before the vehicles are moved, they should check

their vehicles during operation to detect and correct faulty driving practices, and to determine whether or not performance is up to standard. At the completion of the day's operation they should supervise the "grooming" by the vehicle crews. In addition, when any of their equipment is in the shop they should visit the shop each working day to check the progress and quality of the work being performed.

### RECORDS

The keeping of records is an important part of operating maintenance. To be of any value these records must be kept up to date. Too often this phase is neglected for long periods with the result that entries are made from memory or are pure fabrication. An accurately kept set of Vehicle Records is an excellent check on the efficiency of your maintenance system and the economy of your various vehicle types.

The basis of maintenance records is the *Motor Vehicle Service Record Book* (Q.M.C. Form 248) for Quartermaster vehicles and the *Ordnance Motor Book* (O. O. Form, No. 5956) for Ordnance vehicles. Instructions in the book are complete and should be thoroughly understood by the person keeping the records. Data on loading (miles empty, passengers transported, tons hauled, ton or passenger miles and cost per ton or passenger mile) are not applicable to tactical vehicles as they are assumed to operate normally with their tactical or combat loads. The Seventh Cavalry Brigade (Mechanized) at Fort Knox, enters only the words "Tactical Vehicle" in spaces provided for these data.

The *Motor Vehicle Operation and Maintenance Cost Record* (Q.M.C. Form 222) which must be submitted to the Quartermaster General at the end of each year, is filled out directly from pages 8 and 10 of the Vehicle Service Record.

A *Suitability Report* on each vehicle type issued to the organization must be turned in with Form 222, and the Vehicle Service Record is the basis for all the factual data called for in this report.

The other records that must be kept furnish data for making entries in the Vehicle Service Record. These forms were devised for Quartermaster use but with minor changes can be adapted to use for tactical vehicles. Some organizations have improvised forms that meet their special requirements.

The *Driver's Trip Ticket and Performance Record* (Q.M.C. Form 237) is used only when vehicles are dispatched singly or in small groups on non-tactical missions. It serves as a check that the vehicle was used for an authorized purpose.

The *Driver's Daily Vehicle Report* (Q.M.C. Form 223) or some similar improvised form should be filled out by the driver and turned in to the Motor Sergeant at the end of each day's operation. It contains data as to mileage, fuel and lubricant consumption, mechanical difficulties and performance, that are the basis for the entries in the Vehicle Service Record at the end of the month and from

which the Motor Sergeant can determine when the vehicle should go to the shop.

The *Driver's Report—Accident* (Standard Form No. 26) must accompany every vehicle and the driver must be thoroughly instructed in its use.

Whether or not the *Daily Dispatching Record of Motor Vehicles* (Q.M.C. Form 254) and the *Gasoline and Lubricant Issue Slip* (Q.M.C. Form 231) are used depends upon the conditions at any particular station, but some record must be made of the movement and location of vehicles when out of the park and a check must be made between the issue and reported consumption of fuel, lubricant and antifreeze.

The *Technical Inspection of Motor Vehicles* (Q.M.C. Form 260) can be used by the officer making the second echelon technical inspection and the date of the inspection entered in the proper place in the Vehicle Service Record. These inspection forms should be preserved from one inspection to the next as a check on the progress of repairs ordered.

A *Scheduled Maintenance Chart* should be maintained on each vehicle. This chart must be prepared from the manufacturer's operating manual, and list in detail the periodic servicing required on a mileage or "hours of operation" basis with appropriate spaces opposite these details to indicate when this scheduled maintenance was performed. By reference to this chart and the Driver's Daily Vehicle Reports, the Motor Sergeant knows when each vehicle is due for one of its phases of Scheduled Maintenance and the organization commander can check that this maintenance is being performed.

*Work Orders* and *Cost Sheets* should be kept on each job so that these data will be available for entry in the Vehicle Service Record each month. When a vehicle is repaired by the higher echelon of maintenance the Motor Sergeant must obtain the cost data from that echelon for his records.

*Investigating Officers' Report—Accident* (Standard Form No. 27) will be prepared by the officer investigating an accident and *Claim for Damages—Accident, Motor Transportation* (Standard Form No. 28) will be furnished a civilian desiring to make claim for damages as a result of an accident involving a government vehicle.

*Mechanical Inspection Report* (Q.M.C. Form 246) will be prepared by the inspecting officer when a vehicle is put up for I. & I. and whenever a vehicle is in an accident involving mechanical repairs and replacement.

### FIELD SERVICE

In the field the maintenance problems are increased. Generally the vehicles are operated over greater distances and more unfavorable terrain and are exposed to more unfavorable conditions of weather than in garrison.

On extended field service at considerable distance from the home station of the organization, the Unit Equipment Sets, mentioned before, should be installed in the Maintenance Truck so that all the facilities for maintenance are at hand with the organization. For short marches and

field service within, say, 75 miles of the home station, it may be more convenient to carry only the wrecking equipment, block and tackle equipment and a few tools and spare parts into the field, and return those vehicles in need of more extensive repairs to the shops on the Post.

### ON THE MARCH

The maintenance truck is driven by a mechanic, and the Motor and Motor Maintenance Sergeants and another mechanic ride this truck. It should be the last vehicle in column and should drop out with each vehicle that falls out on the march. If possible repairs should be made on the spot so that the disabled vehicle can continue the march. Combat equipment has priority of maintenance facilities. Trucks should not be released individually to rejoin the column but should be conducted at a reasonable rate along the route of march until the column or bivouac is reached. If several trucks have fallen out for minor repairs, groups of three or four should be placed in charge of a responsible noncommissioned officer and directed to rejoin the column at a reasonable rate. When a vehicle cannot be repaired in a reasonable time on the road it should be towed. If impossible to tow the vehicle it should be left in charge of its driver and its exact location recorded and reported so that it may be sent for after reaching bivouac or picked up by wrecking equipment of a higher maintenance echelon. In the Cavalry Division there are two units of the supply services to take care of the higher echelon of maintenance, namely: Light Maintenance Troop of the Quartermaster Squadron; and the Light Maintenance Ordnance Company.

The other three mechanics, with their mechanics tool kits and a few spare parts, ride trucks in the transportation platoon. They assist in repairs, adjustments and inspections during halts. If the Transportation Platoon is divided into sections (baggage and supply, for instance) or a group of trucks accompanies a detached force, at least one of these mechanics should ride the last truck in each group and perform the functions of the crew on the maintenance truck as far as possible.

### IN CAMP OR BIVOUAC

In camp or bivouac the maintenance truck becomes the 2d Echelon Maintenance Shop and often work must continue through rest periods in order to keep the maximum number of vehicles rolling. In order to relieve maintenance personnel of as much work as possible at this time, a large part of the Scheduled Maintenance should be performed by the drivers and their assistants under the supervision of a mechanic.

### COMBAT

During combat the Maintenance Crew performs maintenance at and from the bivouac of the Combat Train.

### SCOUT CAR PLATOON

The Scout Car Platoon, operating over a wide area, on various routes, must rely on its own resources for minor repairs and adjustments. With that in mind scout car per-



sonnel must be carefully selected and trained in making emergency minor adjustments and repairs, and authorized to do more extensive work than drivers of the transportation platoon.

### COMPARISON TO HORSEMASTERSHIP

The foregoing may sound very technical and complicated, but in reality it is exactly parallel to what we have been doing in horse outfits for years. A recruit is trained to ride. This includes how to control the horse and how to conduct the horse on the march and cross country so as to prevent undue fatigue and injury. He learns how to care for his horse, which includes grooming, the adjustment of equipment and the inspection of the horse at halts. At the conclusion of his recruit training he has a horse assigned to him, and this horse becomes his responsibility in care and operation—*First Echelon Maintenance*.

The Stable Sergeant, horseshoers and saddler perform

the *Second Echelon Maintenance* on the horse and equipment. Periodic shoeing and the clipping of animals correspond to Schedule Maintenance. Tightening and replacing shoes and the treating of minor injuries and ailments in garrison and in the field, falls under the head of repair and replacement maintenance. More serious injuries and diseases are treated in the higher echelon, the Veterinary Corps.

Constant inspection and supervision is carried on to insure that the animals are being properly cared for and maintained. Feeding cards tacked to the heel posts, forage records, shoeing records and the Horse Record Cards all have their counterparts in the Vehicle records. So you see that the care and maintenance of Motor Vehicles is not a mysterious subject beyond the scope of the ordinary human; it is merely the same common sense, logical system of care, repair and inspection that has been applied to all military equipment since time immemorial.



### Heavy Machine Gun Publication

During 1937, the War Department published a training text that possesses much value for Machine Gun units in the Cavalry. It was prepared under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry for use with the Extension Course of the Cavalry School.

#### *General Contents:*

- Section I. General characteristics.
- II. Technique of machine-gun fire, direct laying.
- III. Instruments.
- IV. Battery drill.
- V. Technique of machine-gun fire, indirect laying.
- VI. Combat principles: the heavy machine-gun squad, section and platoon.
- VII. Combat practice firing.
- VIII. Combat principles: the heavy machine-gun troop.
- IX. Troop combat exercises.

This volume may be purchased through the Superintendent of Documents, U. S. Printing Office, Washington, D. C., at twenty cents per copy.

# The Protection of Cavalry Against Liquid Vesicants

By Major Herbert L. Earnest, Cavalry

Have you ever been in an area contaminated with a liquid vesicant? I have, and it is not the most pleasant sensation in the world even with protective equipment. With proper protective measures it will be possible to lead your command through areas contaminated with liquid vesicants with a minimum of casualties.

Do you realize that if you cross an area covered with brush which has been contaminated with a liquid vesicant or if your command is sprayed with a liquid vesicant not only the men but the horses and equipment will become contaminated?

Have you given any serious consideration to what you would do if your command did become contaminated with a liquid vesicant or what you can do to prevent contamination?

My purpose is to bring home to all cavalymen the necessity of seriously considering the measures necessary to protect their units against liquid vesicants. There never has been a saying more true than "an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure" when applied to chemical warfare. How can we apply this ounce of prevention rather than having to accept the necessary pound of cure?

It will be necessary at the outset to give you a few well known facts.

First, liquid vesicants upon contact with exposed portions of the body or upon contact with ordinary clothing covering the skin will cause skin burns. The degree of burn depends upon the amount of liquid which reaches the skin.

Secondly, the vapors from liquid vesicants will cause eye burns, lung irritation, and skin blisters. The degree of casualty will depend upon the amount of vapor in the air.

Thirdly, liquid vesicants or their vapor upon contact with cloth, leather, wood, and the paint on metals will penetrate these materials and cause contamination. If handled while contaminated these materials will cause skin burns and the vapor will irritate the lungs.

Vesicants, liquid or liquid spray, will be dispersed by chemical troops, artillery, and by airplanes.

Chemical troops as now organized in most armies are equipped to disperse liquid vesicants by chemical mortars and by chemical land mines. Cavalry may have to traverse areas contaminated with liquid vesicants by chemical troops. Gas reconnaissance should minimize this danger.

Artillery will disperse liquid vesicants from shells of various sizes. If Cavalry is caught in an area which is being shelled it must depend upon its speed to disperse and

leave the shelled area. There will not be time to adjust protective equipment if it is not already adjusted.

Airplanes will disperse liquid vesicants by bombs and by chemical spray tanks. Again Cavalry must depend upon its speed for its primary protection. There will not be time to adjust protective equipment when surprised.

Speed, while excellent, is not the whole solution; in fact, it is only a beginning. Contaminated areas at times will have to be traversed and Cavalrymen will have to take their losses. We can minimize these losses by proper reconnaissance. An airplane spray attack with vesicants, while in bivouac or on the march, will cause casualties if proper protection is not afforded.

How then can we protect the trooper, his mount, and his equipment from vesicants? The answer is that he can not expect complete protection and maintain mobility, but planned protective measures will reduce casualties to an appreciable extent.

## THE TROOPER AND HIS HORSE

For the protection of the trooper it is entirely practical to have protective clothing, shoes, gloves, and a gas mask. In practically any situation the trooper will have time to make the necessary adjustments for his protection against vesicant vapors or a fine liquid spray as may be expected from airplanes. The protective clothing, after coming in contact with a vesicant, should be changed for new clothing at the earliest possible moment.

The protection of the horse is a different proposition. There are many things that can be done, but the poor devil is not able to do these things himself. Time will often be a factor, particularly if attacked by airplanes. The trooper will barely have time, in daylight, to adjust his own equipment; therefore the horse is apt to suffer unless protective equipment has been adjusted before the attack.

The whole exterior of the horse and his lungs will be affected by vesicants. The lungs are taken care of by a horse gas mask. The most vulnerable parts left are the eyes, pastern, coronet, commissures, and all places where the hair is thin and the horse perspires freely.

The eyes can be protected by goggles made similar to the hood winks of the type used in pack trains. Cellophane eye pieces will be necessary. The hood wink could be carried on the bridle.

The fetlock, pastern, coronet, and that portion of the legs below the knee will have to be protected by either boots or rags. If boots or rags are not used partial protec-

tion may be had by scrubbing the legs with a neutralizing agent at the earliest practicable moment.

The hoof can be protected by shoeing with a metal pad, using tar and oakum under the pad.

If we can protect the lungs, eyes, and legs we will have protected the most vital points of the horse although the top, under, and side lines have not been taken care of. Perhaps this portion of the body can be protected in conjunction with the protection of equipment.

#### EQUIPMENT

If we check over the material in different items of clothing and equipment we will find that they naturally divide themselves into three groups:

	Group No. 1	Group No. 2	Group No. 3
Cloth	Web	Leather	Steel
	Canvas	Wood	Aluminum
	Woolen		
	Cotton		
	Hemp		

All items in Group No. 1 (cloth) can be treated with protective chemicals; however after contact with vesicant vapors or the liquid in fine spray it is advisable to turn this equipment in as contaminated equipment as soon as practicable. The items in Group No. 1 should be treated at least once every month.

Group No. 2 includes all wood and leather equipment. Leather is very porous and absorbs mustard quite rapidly. It is a long and arduous task to decontaminate leather, and the results are seldom satisfactory unless decontamination can be started immediately after contamination.

Leather can be treated with a chemical which will prevent the penetration of a liquid vesicant. This chemical will not neutralize the vesicant but will prevent it from penetrating into the leather. It therefore becomes necessary to neutralize the vesicant at once. This is not always possible as the time element will not permit time for decontamination. If the time element will permit time for decontamination the vesicant can be neutralized with chloride of lime, a neutralizing chemical solution, or lye soap and water. Hot water is preferable. Leather should be treated with a chemical to prevent the penetration of liquid vesicants at least once every month.

Wood can be covered with a protective cover to prevent contamination.

Group No. 3 contains the metals. Vesicants will not penetrate bare, bright metals but will penetrate the paint on these metals. Preventive measures are impracticable in most cases. When the vesicant comes in contact with the paint, decontamination becomes necessary. The methods of neutralizing the vesicants are the same as for leather.

The components of the pack consist of the following:

- Bridle
- Halter
- Saddle
- Saddle blanket
- Saddle bags
- Canteen roll

- Pommel roll
- Canteen, cup and cover, with straps
- Rifle and scabbard
- Lariat and strap
- Surcingle

In addition Cavalry has both motorized and mechanized units.

All components of the pack and all vehicles are, at present, exposed. They are all made of materials listed in Groups No. 1, No. 2, and No. 3. They are subject to contamination with liquid vesicants either from airplane spray or brushing through contaminated areas. Some method to prevent contamination of the above equipment is necessary. A cavalryman riding leather equipment contaminated with a vesicant will soon become as useless as a foot soldier whose shoes are contaminated with a vesicant. In other words a sore buttock is as disabling to a cavalryman as a sore foot is to an infantryman. What to do?

It is difficult to convince some cavalrymen that they may be unfortunate enough to have their unit contaminated with a vesicant. They prefer to believe that they can *always* prevent this contamination by reconnaissance and speed. I do not believe that they will be that fortunate and consequently I am working on the premise that Cavalry will occasionally have to traverse areas which have become contaminated and that Cavalry will be sprayed with chemicals from the air.

There is no protection for the equipment, and contaminated equipment is more dangerous than contaminated ground or shrubbery.

To protect our equipment we must do one of two things. Possibly both. We must protect the individual articles by treating them with neutralizing agents or agents which prevent the penetration of vesicants, or we must develop a protective cover which will cover the full pack saddle. There are drawbacks to both, but the worst drawback is no protection at all.

Before going any further it might be well to discuss briefly the practicability of these methods.

The trooper can be taken care of by protective clothing and a gas mask.

It is entirely practical to shoe horses with shoes which will protect the commissures and to have a gas mask for the horse. This leaves the remainder of the horses unprotected.

It is also practical to protect equipment against vesicants; however if this equipment comes in contact with a vesicant it will have to be decontaminated as soon as practicable. In the case of leather the protective treatment will not neutralize the vesicant but merely prevent it from penetrating into the leather. The liquid must be neutralized with a chemical agent immediately, or it becomes highly dangerous. It will not always be possible to neutralize the liquid at once; therefore this is a serious disadvantage so far as leather is concerned.

The next thing to consider then is the protection of the equipment with a protective cover. The immediate ob-



jection to this is that the trooper can not ride constantly on a cover which protects his full pack. I agree with that, but will it be necessary for him to ride constantly on a cover? I do not think so.

The greatest danger of vesicant contamination will come from traversing areas contaminated with a vesicant and from vesicants sprayed by airplanes.

In the first case a protective cover carried on the saddle can be adjusted before traversing the area.

In the second case I believe the majority of Cavalry marches in the theater of operations will be made at night and that Cavalry under these circumstances will have ample time to take cover and to adjust protective covers before being attacked by airplanes. There will be many times when marches will have to be made during daylight hours. When this is necessary and the enemy is known to have air superiority and is employing chemicals by air, then protective covers should be worn throughout the march. A protective cover which will run from the horse's poll to his croup and down to the belly line on the sides could be devised thus protecting the horse and the equipment carried on the horse.

Now let us see how these two methods might work.

Assume that we have treated all components of the pack as previously mentioned and that one bar of issue soap (GI) has been issued to each man. The unit has been attacked by airplanes using machine guns and vesicant spray. About one-fifth of the command was caught in the spray. Our mission requires us to be at a certain place five miles distant in one hour and fifteen minutes. What to do?

Utilize from ten to fifteen minutes in scrubbing contaminated leather with lye soap and water; also scrub down the horse's legs with lye soap and water. Continue the march. Upon arrival at destination, if time is available, wash horses with lye soap and hot water. The same for all leather equipment. As soon as practical have new clothing issued and all equipment treated again. Lye soap and water must be used immediately and the legs thoroughly washed. This does not mean that you will get thorough protection but it will lessen the degree of danger to a great extent.

Again let us assume the same situation with a protective cover adjusted. What to do?

Wash the horse's legs down with lye soap and water and continue the march. As soon as practicable issue new clothing and protective covers. Aerate contaminated clothing and equipment.

#### MOTORIZED AND MECHANIZED UNITS

Motorized and mechanized units must depend, to a large extent, upon immediate decontamination. The canvas covers on all vehicles should be impermeable to liquid vesicants. For the decontamination of the vehicle itself it will be necessary to wash the vehicle down with a neutralizing chemical solution, chloride of lime, or lye soap and hot water. This will not be possible unless we have a large tank car filled with one of these solutions with each unit or individual tanks with one of these solutions on each vehicle.

In conclusion it is my belief that:

1. The Cavalry trooper, his mount, and his equipment can be protected to a large extent from vesicants without affecting his mobility by the following means:

##### a. Trooper.

- (1) Gas mask, slung under left arm.
- (2) Protective clothing including shoes, gloves, and hood. (Worn.)

##### b. Horse.

- (1) Gas mask, slung under neck.
- \* (2) Goggles, slung above eyes.
- (3) Protective shoes.
- (4) Protective boots or grooming rags, carried in saddle pockets.

##### c. Equipment.

- (1) Treat all in Group No. 1 with a protective chemical.
- (2) Treat all leather.
- (3) Bar of issue soap, carried in saddle pockets.  
or  
(1) Protective cover, carried on pommel (in lieu of (1) and (2) above).
- (2) Bar of issue soap, carried in saddle pockets.
2. Spray tanks will have to be employed to decontaminate contaminated vehicles.
3. "An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure."

\*Goggles could probably be made a part of the gas mask.

GOVERNMENT IS A MEANS to an end, and that end is the preservation of property and order.—(BROOKE ADAMS, in *War As the Ultimate Form of Economic Competition*.)

# SPECIALIZATION

By Captain M. L. Stockton, Jr., Cavalry

EDITOR'S NOTE: "It isn't what you don't know that gets you into trouble; it's what you know for sure that isn't so."—(Unknown.)

\* \* \*

Articles on military subjects, contributed by officers of the Army, are appearing in various magazines with increasing frequency. The presumption is reasonable that the articles were unsolicited and, judging from explanatory references, represent the views and opinions of the author only and are not to be interpreted as the opinion of any group of officers. I have read such of these articles as have come to my attention which prompts this offering.

## SPECIALIST ADVICE IN CIVIL LIFE

The complexity of modern life has created an unbelievably large number of trained specialists. In professional life there are many specialists within a single profession. Business, generally, is highly specialized as are all forms of economic activity. It is a generally adopted practice, in civil life, to seek advice from specialists whenever circumstances or conditions indicate the need. It may be reasonably assumed that the advice given by a specialist is better than could have been obtained from a non-specialist. Let us assume, as an illustration, a situation where an individual is suffering from infected tonsils. Normal procedure would be to consult the family physician who is assumed to be a licensed practitioner with a general practice. The family doctor would probably recommend that a throat specialist be consulted. Conditions do not appear to indicate the advisability of consulting a chiropodist. Acquaintances of the patient will doubtless offer unsolicited advice and suggest remedies. It is safe to assume that this advice will be disregarded, the throat specialist consulted and his recommendations followed. Conduct will vary depending upon the individual but it would appear that the procedure outlined is normal whether we are considering the field of physical ailments or engaged in building a house.

## SPECIALIST ADVICE IN THE ARMY

The procedure of individuals in the Army with respect to what might be considered as personal problems is practically identical with that in civil life. In the Army, however, there exists an additional large group problem that does not have its counterpart in civil life. From a broad aspect, individuals or small groups, in civil life, are striving for individual or small group success. In the Army the various arms and services are not or should not be working for the advancement of any one group at the expense of the remaining groups. That the military organization is a complex machine the successful operation of which is dependent upon the smooth working of all of its component parts is generally accepted. The Army machine requires trained specialists to insure smooth operation due to its complexity just as civil enterprise has produced specialists to satisfy its needs. Army specialists, officers of the Army, keep under observation and super-

vision the functioning of various parts of the Army machine. The operation of the machine as a whole is supervised by officers of broad experience who are able to determine whether parts are obsolete or whether efficiency is impaired due to wear. These officers likewise are able to determine whether a new type machine is needed. Before arriving at a final decision, however, the specialists who have watched the functioning of separate parts of the machine will be consulted for advice. Unsolicited advice relative to what should be done will also be offered which will be similar in character to the advice offered to the man with the bad tonsils by his layman acquaintances.

## UNSOLICITED MILITARY ADVICE TO THE CIVIL POPULATION

The profession of arms is one that the civilian need not call upon for advice under ordinary circumstances. Congressional committees elect to call upon certain officers of the Army for their opinions with reference to whether matters relating to the Army should or should not be given favorable consideration but this has application to a small group of individuals. It was recently suggested in Congress that the Army was remiss in failing to provide for the enlightenment of the civil population with reference to defensive measures to be taken for civil protection in the event of hostilities. Whether this should be considered as an Army function I am not qualified to state. It is well understood, however, that the primary function of the armed forces of the United States, after the declaration of war, is to bring the war to a successful conclusion as rapidly as possible. It has always been obvious that this will require that the war machine be correctly assembled to insure maximum efficiency. It pre-supposes the elimination of unnecessary parts in construction as well as the existence of a spare-parts box stocked according to life expectancy of the working parts of the machine. The Army has officers, specialists, whose job it is to advise on technical matters relating to the construction and operation of the war machine. The Army has other officers who volunteer unsolicited advice on these same matters. In the latter case, if this advice were restricted to military circles no damage would result since military readers or listeners are able to evaluate it. Unfortunately, however, this advice is being disseminated to the civil population the majority of whom have no means of determining whether the advice comes from a specialist or not. The non-military man is apt to assume that the speaker or writer is eminently qualified since he is a member of the profession of arms. The average layman's military knowledge is largely confined to what he reads in daily papers and periodicals with the result that published articles have a far reaching effect. Articles that are unsound or do not reflect the consensus of able military minds have as wide a distribution as articles of merit. What conclusions then will be reached by non-military readers? That false ideas will be created cannot be denied. It is already evident that

confusion had been created in the minds of those upon whom the Army is dependent for securing essential items for the construction and operation of the Army machine.

#### SPECIALIST ADVICE TO THE CIVIL POPULATION

If the Army assumes the duty of advising the civil population, in peacetime, as to conduct in the event of hostilities, the dissemination of information on this subject will naturally be controlled. Whether this be assumed as a duty or not and in the absence of rigid regulatory provisions specifying what may be said and who may say it, the suggestion is offered that officers restrict themselves to statements of established fact that are not of a controversial nature when addressing the civil population through the

medium of non-professional periodicals. If, individually, we hold deep rooted convictions, demanding expression, on the organization and employment of military forces I submit that the military field is productive ground in which to plant the seed. In such a field less labor is required. The ground has already been prepared for planting. Any fertile seed will grow in this field. Let us use this field as experimental acreage and harvest at least one crop before we undertake to convince the country at large of the necessity for radical changes. Finally, if we must be heard, let us examine well our qualifications as specialists in some line. If we qualify on this score let us then confine ourselves to a discussion of the subject on which we are informed.



## Active Cavalry

The capture of Pancrudo left the road to the south open, with the villages of Cuevas and Alpenese within reach. The front having been breached also near Rubielos, General Monasterio's forces, which included a full division of cavalry, racing up the rolling slopes, cut diagonally across the enemy's position, extending the salient fifty kilometers in depth toward the village of Alfambra in three days of intensive fighting. At the same time, the forces on the

northern flank moved forward equally, protected by aviation. Cavalry cut through the Red Lines, routing partially formed reserves. In the southern zones, on the right wing of this offensive, the Galician Corps, commanded by General Aranda, hero of Oviedo, was in action.

---

Extract from *Military Operations*, published in SPAIN, March 15, 1938, Volume I, No. 11.



# Notes on the Use of Cavalry in the American Revolution

*By Frederic Gilbert Bauer, Colonel, JAG-Reserve*

A celebrated professor of anatomy, at a certain point in his lectures, used to say: "We now come to the spleen. About the spleen we know nothing. So much for the spleen." One whose knowledge is derived entirely from the school and general histories might make a similar remark about cavalry in our Revolution, but the analogy would be only superficial, because in the archives of the War Department and of the original states and in monographs on particular phases of the war there is much valuable material on both the use and the lack of mounted troops. The present article is a first attempt to collect and interpret this material and is offered to the profession in the hope that it may furnish a basis for further study of the subject whenever additional sources of information which I have not had the privilege of consulting are brought to light.

## I

During the first two years of the war the Americans had little or no cavalry and were forced to improvise substitutes, whereas the British apparently did not know how to use the cavalry they had.

The Siege of Boston was stabilized warfare on a terrain which afforded no opportunity to use mounted troops, but as soon as the American army moved to New York, its need of these was at once apparent. At first the only substitute the Americans had was to organize such officers as owned horses into patrols too small to have any fighting power and, therefore, useful only for observation. Such a patrol, sent to the Jamaica Pass before the Battle of Long Island, was captured, leaving the American army without any reconnoitering detachment on its left flank. Had there been some efficient cavalry there, timely warning of the turning movements by way of Jamaica could have been given and a delaying action fought. The British on the other hand, in spite of heavy horse casualties on the voyage, had a considerable body of dragoons on the island, and, had they used them to advantage, it is doubtful if Washington could have made his famous night retreat to Manhattan.

To take the place of the cavalry he did not have Washington organized the "Congress' Own Rangers," a battalion of light infantry, commanded by Lieut. Col. Thomas Knowlton and composed of the flower of the

army, Capt. Nathan Hale being one of the company commanders. When Washington wanted someone to go as a spy within the British lines, he naturally turned to this organization, knowing that in it he would find someone able and willing to undertake the dangerous and important task.

The most conspicuous instance of the British failure to use cavalry is furnished by the New Jersey campaign of November and December, 1776. Washington, with a force of barely 3,000, most of whose enlistments would expire in a month, was retreating before a British force of 12,000, at an average rate of less than five miles per day. So hopeless did the American cause seem that Washington wrote to his brother: "If every nerve is not strained to recruit the new army with all possible expedition, I think the game is pretty nearly up." Cornwallis had the better part of a regiment of dragoons, whereas Washington until December 2, when the Philadelphia troop of light horse joined him, had no cavalry except a few of Col. Sheldon's Connecticut dragoons.<sup>1</sup> So closely was Washington pressed that the enemy entered one side of Newark as the Americans left the other, and when the army crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania, the British reached the East bank of the river before the Philadelphia troop, who were acting as rear guard, had reached the other shore. In spite of the fact that the work which this troop accomplished on that campaign seems little short of a miracle for a command numbering only twenty-five, there can be little doubt that if Cornwallis had used his numerically superior dragoons to attack the flanks and rear of the retreating Americans, Washington's army could never have escaped across the river. As the British historian Stedman says: "It looked as if Howe had calculated with the greatest accuracy the exact time necessary for his enemy to make his escape."

So, too, when the British and Hessian troops were dispersed in winter billets along the Delaware, if the cavalry had been used to patrol the roads leading from the ferries, Washington could never have made his surprise attack on Trenton, and there can be little doubt that the Revolution would have collapsed. The Trenton garrison included 20

<sup>1</sup>A New York newspaper of July 11, 1776, thus describes them: "Some of these worthy soldiers assisted in their present uniforms at the first reduction of Louisburg, and their lank, lean cheeks, and war worn coats, are viewed with more veneration than if they were glittering nabobs from India, or Bashaws with nine tails."



dragoons of the 16th British regiment, a small number, yet enough to have covered the "river road" leading into Trenton from the North, particularly when there were also available 50 German Jägers to perform the near-by reconnaissance. Instead the Jäger were posted as an ordinary infantry picket one half mile out of town and the dragoons appear to have done nothing but send a patrol each morning to Yardley's Ferry, five miles to the North.

The Bennington raid in August, 1777, was another instance of the misuse of troops. It was emphatically a case for a swiftly moving force who could strike a sudden blow and make off with their plunder before the countryside could rally. In justice to Burgoyne it must be said that he was apparently so short of horses that he could not send a sufficient body of cavalry. Instead, however, of sending the next thing to it, his light infantry companies and German Jäger, he sent largely dismounted dragoons, wearing high boots, heavy leather caps and sabres. In the rain which turned the roads into mud these men, encumbered with this heavy outfit, were at a distinct disadvantage against Stark's farmers, many of whom were no doubt in their shirt sleeves, with no impedimenta except a rifle and cartridge box.<sup>2</sup>

## II

In brilliant contrast with the inefficient use of the British

<sup>2</sup>Since the foregoing paper was written, an article by Reginald Hargreaves entitled "Cavalry in the American War of Independence" has appeared in the October, 1937 number of the *British Cavalry Journal*. It is defective in its treatment of the American side of the subject for the precise reason which led me to write the foregoing article, namely, the lack of detailed information in available form. On the British side, he obviously has fuller sources of information than were available to me, and for Americans his

cavalry in this period is the record of the "Troop of Light Horse of the City of Philadelphia," an organization which has had continuous militia service since November 17, 1774, and is now the Headquarters Troop of the 52nd Cavalry Brigade. Like all cavalry of the colonial period, it was composed of men of wealth and social position who furnished their own mounts, many of its original members belonging to the "Gloucester Fox Hunting Club." During 1775 and 1776 it was the only cavalry worthy of the name which our army had.

After six months' intensive training its first active duty was in June, 1775, when it escorted Washington from Philadelphia to King's Bridge, N. Y., on his way to take command of the army before Boston. During the entire war it was constantly on call for any duty, repeatedly furnishing detachments for guarding prisoners and cannon, conveying money to pay the army, and escorting distinguished foreigners. It supplied the guard for Washington's headquarters at Morristown and Newtown in 1776 and at White Marsh and Valley Forge in 1777, and for Congress at York in 1777. It was called out to meet threatened invasions in 1779 and 1780, to suppress a riot in Philadelphia in October, 1779, and to quell a mutiny in the army at Princeton in January, 1781.

Its most distinguished service, however, was in the New Jersey campaign of 1776-7. Reporting to Washington at Trenton on December 2, 1776, as above stated, it acted as covering force while the army was being transferred to the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware River, furnished Washington's headquarters guard and couriers, and formed part of the left column in the memorable march to Trenton on Christmas night. On December 30 a patrol of twelve under Col. Joseph Reed, Washington's Adjutant General, reconnoitered the British at Princeton and captured twelve out of a party of thirteen British dragoons. On New Year's day it patrolled the Sand Town road, over which the army later made its midnight march to Princeton. After the Battle of Princeton it protected Moulder's battery, which was covering the withdrawal of the American army, beating off an attack by British dragoons and enabling the battery to bring off all its guns. It seems incredible that a command numbering only 3 officers and 22

article forms for this reason a valuable supplement to mine. On certain points effecting the British side, I must, however, disagree with him, e.g.:

1. Though he gives a long list of British and German cavalry organizations, which came to America, he overlooks the fact that the horse casualties at sea were so great that most of these arrived dismounted and served as foot troops, for, in spite of the fact that Tories were numerous among the horse owning class and even so-called "patriots" often preferred to sell for British gold rather than for continental paper, the British seem to have little success in procuring horses locally. Indeed, Lieut. Col. Lee expressly mentions the inferior character of the British mounts.

2. He regards the German Jäger or chasseurs, as he calls them as mounted troops. The few organizations of mounter Jäger (Jäger zu Pferde) date only to the late nineteenth century, and not only is there no evidence of any such mounted troops having come to America, but there is, so far as I can ascertain, no evidence of their existence at the time of our Revolution. The Jäger were expert marksmen, mainly recruited from the huntsmen of the royal forests, and were armed with rifles instead of smooth bore muskets. They were specially skilled in reconnaissance and corresponded to the British Light Infantry companies or to Knowlton's Rangers, referred to above.

men could have accomplished what this troop did in the face of so great odds, but the facts are amply attested. In his order relieving the troop after its two months' service Washington said: "Tho' composed of Gentlemen of Fortune, they have shewn a noble Example of discipline and subordination, and in several actions have shewn a Spirit of Bravery which will ever do Honor to them and will ever be gratefully remembered by me."

The troop with 20 men was again on duty under Washington in September and October, 1777, participating in the Battles of Brandywine and Germantown. It was also with Lafayette in the Barren Hill engagement of May 18, 1778.

### III

In a paper read before the Massachusetts Historical Society in May, 1910, (*Proceedings*, Vol. XLIII, pp. 547-593, later revised in *Studies Military and Diplomatic*, pp. 59-113) Gen. Charles Francis Adams discusses why more use was not made of cavalry in the early years of the Revolution and argues that it was because Washington did not understand the function of cavalry in an army or know how to use it. In support of this contention he compares the use of cavalry by the South in 1861-5 and says that a like opportunity and similar resources were open to Washington, because the situation was one where irregular cavalry operations were the readiest way to cripple the British. "It was a region full of horses, while every Virginian and nearly every inhabitant of Pennsylvania and the Jerseys was accustomed to the saddle. Then, as later in the Confederacy during our War of Secession, people owned their mounts. Every farming lad and every son of a farmer was, in a rude way, an equestrian; . . . in fact the whole social and business life of the community was in a more or less direct way connected with the saddle and the pillion." He cites several instances where cavalry could have been used with telling effect and stresses the incident when in July, 1776, Washington declined the services of Col. Seymour's regiment of Connecticut cavalry on the ground that the terrain about New York afforded no opportunity to use mounted troops and that he had neither forage nor means to buy it, but offered to use the regiment as infantry. The letters from Col. Seymour and Gen. Wadsworth to Gov. Trumbull of Connecticut are printed in full in the *Proceedings* of the Massachusetts Historical Society, so we can judge the incident upon the same evidence which Gen. Adams used.

Gen. Adams had been a cavalry officer in the Army of the Potomac and knew from personal observation how cavalry could be used, so his views are entitled to weight, but in my opinion he distorts the picture by a false perspective. Cavalry in colonial America was more of a social than a military institution, occupying much the position of the *equites equo privato* in ancient Rome. The few cavalry troops were volunteer organizations, where members furnished their own mounts and were exempt from service in the territorial militia companies. The only colonial war in which cavalry could have been used normally was Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia. In the ordinary backwoods

fighting, as Gen. Adams admits, the horse, except as a means of transportation, was a positive incumbrance. Our ancestors learned by sad experience that successfully to fight Indians they must use Indian tactics and move under cover. A trooper crashing through the forest not only gave the lurking redskins warning of his approach, but furnished a better target. Our ancestors were no fools and long before the Revolution they knew that the chances of cavalry being called out to serve against the French and Indians was negligible. This fact tended to draw into the cavalry troops men of wealth and social position who felt above performing the ordinary duties of a soldier and perhaps had little stomach for the hardships of field service. Col. Seymour's regiment, as his own letters admit, rushed into the field without even blankets and refused to do their turn of fatigue on the ground that the law of Connecticut exempted cavalry from it. Washington's commendation of the Philadelphia troop shows how noteworthy it was that "gentlemen of fortune" should show "a noble example of discipline and subordination," and the exhortation of Congress, quoted later, to form cavalry troops is addressed to "young gentlemen of property." In other words, cavalry service was still regarded as a rich man's game.

Furthermore, horses were not so common, in the Northern colonies at least, as Gen. Adams supposes. The poorer classes travelled on foot, even for long distances, and oxen were used on many farms for draft. It is surprising how many inventories of decedents' estates include no horses. Even if "the whole social and business life . . . was . . . connected with the saddle and pillion," it does not indicate a natural aptitude for cavalry service. The type of horse and the type of horsemanship required for a farmer and his wife to ride to church or market at a walk or jog trot on saddle and pillion differed materially from that required in cavalry work. Indeed, the bulk of people in the Northern and Middle colonies appear to have regarded the horse only as a means of locomotion, and many of the leisure class, who alone had the time and means to cultivate advanced equitation, were Tories. Again, the infantryman, particularly from the more sparsely settled regions, went to battle with the same, or at least the same type firelock which he had used from boyhood to shoot game, so that he was thoroughly at home with it, whereas the cavalryman had no need in civil life to learn the use of the horse pistol, the sword, the lance, or even the musketoon or carbine.

That Washington knew little of the technique of using mounted troops is quite probable, for, as pointed out above, the colonial wars had given him no opportunity to learn it, but the same is true of artillery, for there were few Louisburgs and Ticonderogas, and the campaigns in which he had served had afforded no field for the normal use of that arm. Yet he knew enough of artillery to call on Henry Knox, then little more than a book soldier, to command and train that arm and throughout the war he used his Chief of Artillery in thoroughly modern fashion. As he was himself an expert equestrian and a breeder of



## COMMENDATION

The Philadelphia Troop of Light Horse under the command of Captain Morris, having performed their Tour of duty are discharged for the present —

I take this Opportunity of returning my most sincere thanks to the Captain and to the Gentlemen who compose the Troop, for the many essential Services which they have rendered to their Country, and to me personally during the Course of this severe Campaign. Tho' composed of Gentlemen of Fortune, they have shewn a noble Example of discipline and Subordination, and in several Actions have shewn a Spirit of Bravery which will ever do Honor to them and will ever be gratefully remembered by me

Given at Head Quarters at  
Morris Town this 23<sup>d</sup> Jan<sup>y</sup> 1777.

G. Washington



horses, it is fair to assume that he had the same general knowledge of cavalry that he had of artillery. In my opinion, his forming patrols of mounted officers and organizing Knowlton's Rangers to do what was really cavalry work shows that he did understand the function of cavalry, rather than the reverse, but did not know where to get efficient cavalry and so improvised a substitute. In other words, he realized the worthlessness of the *equites equo privato* which the colonial militia system had produced.

Last but not least, the Revolution produced no one to whom Washington could commit the training and chief command of the cavalry with the same confidence he felt in handing over the artillery to Knox. The entire war did not produce a Cromwell, a Stuart or a Sheridan. The cavalry had no head until the arrival of Count Pulaski, and he, in spite of his great abilities, did not adapt his military knowledge to American conditions as readily as did von Steuben, and was handicapped by the jealousy felt toward him as a foreigner and by his scanty knowledge of English. The four cavalry officers next in rank to Gen. Pulaski, Cols. Bland, Sheldon, Baylor and Moylan, did not rise above mediocrity, and the despair of getting a real cavalry commander is shown by the vote of Congress, November, 24, 1778, authorizing Washington to detail an infantry

officer to be chief of cavalry (see below). The real cavalry leaders whom the Revolution developed, "Light Horse Harry" Lee, and William Washington, did not rise above subordinate positions, and, brilliant as was their ability in command of small bodies of horse which they led personally, there is no proof that they would have been equally efficient in chief command, where they would have had to depend on subordinates for the actual troop leadership.

In short, Washington's failure to use cavalry was, in my opinion, due quite as much to lack of good cavalry material and a competent cavalry commander as to his own lack of cavalry experience and lack of appreciation of the part mounted troops play in the war machine.

#### IV

If there was any failure to appreciate the need of cavalry at the opening of the New York campaign, it must have been short lived, for on November 29, 1776, Congress appointed a committee of five "to consider and report a proper method for establishing and training a cavalry in this continent," and on December 12 appointed Elisha Sheldon of Connecticut lieutenant colonel commandant, to raise and train a regiment of cavalry. How great the exigency was is shown by the fact that the companies were ordered to report to General Washington as soon as raised, without waiting for the regiment to be complete.

This regiment, later known as the 2nd Continental Dragoons, served throughout the war. It was principally recruited in Connecticut, though there were enlistments from other colonies, chiefly New York and Massachusetts. The earliest roll of the 1st Dragoons (Col. Theodore Bland) is for November, 1777, and I have found no record of its service before that date, although a commission in the regiment is dated as early as June, 1776. If this date is correct, it lends support to the view I have expressed above, that the reason cavalry was not used in the American army in the campaigns of 1776 was because efficient cavalry could not be raised. In the light of the vote of November 29, given above, it seems more probable that the date of the commission is wrongly given. The extant rolls indicate that the 3rd Dragoons (Col. George Baylor) and the 4th Dragoons (Col. Stephen Moylan) were raised in 1777. Zebulon Pike, father of the explorer, was a cornet in the latter regiment. There was also in the continental establishment Capt. Bartholomew von Heer's independent troop, enlisted for the duration of the war and composed largely of Germans, which appears to have served from July, 1778, to April, 1783.

Beside the continental regiments the only colonies to furnish cavalry were Connecticut (5 regiments of militia dragoons), New Jersey (Nixon's troop, 1777, and William Crane's troop, 1780), Virginia (Gen. Nelson's corps of light dragoons and Capt. Thomas Watkins' troop), North Carolina (a regiment of light dragoons, and South Carolina (Capt. Matthew Singleton's troop, from St. Mark's Parish and Lieut. Col. Henry Hampton's regiment). This last organization, which was in service

1781 to 1782, received pay and bounty in "grown" and "small" negroes, and the only roll in the War Department shows 39¾ grown negroes due Capt. Barnett. Just how three-fourths of a negro would be paid might make an interesting problem for one of the service schools.

It will be noted that the continental cavalry were dragoons. The spirit of economy in military matters is not new, and our ancestors could not see the advantage of equipping a light trooper who could serve only on horseback when for practically the same cost they could have a dragoon who could fight either mounted or dismounted. Congress learned from experience, however, as it has sometimes done in later years, and as a matter of fact, if we can judge from the few equipment rolls extant, the mounted troops were actually equipped as light cavalry, for their only arms were the sword and pistol. Another curious fact which these rolls reveal is that the 2nd Dragoons, and probably the other regiments, at least in the latter part of the war, had four mounted troops and two dismounted companies of light infantry.

The spirit of economy also appears in a vote of March 2, 1778, wherein Congress urges "those enjoying gifts of fortune to set a laudable example," and calls on "young gentlemen of property and spirit" to organize cavalry troops to serve for the remainder of the year at their own expense, except for rations and forage. Truly the colonial idea of *equites equo privato* and that cavalry service was a rich man's game was hard in dying out. On September 11, 1778, Congress asked Washington whether some of the cavalry could not be dispensed with or ordered elsewhere to save expense.

March 14, 1777, Congress approved the organization for the cavalry. Each regiment was to have a colonel, lieutenant colonel, major, quartermaster, surgeon, surgeon's mate, paymaster, adjutant, saddler, trumpet major, 4 supernumeraries, and 6 troops, each consisting of a captain, lieutenant, cornet, quartermaster sergeant, orderly or drill sergeant, trumpeter, farrier, armorer, 4 corporals and 32 privates, a total of 279 to a regiment. The muster rolls show, of course, that the troops were not always full, but they also show that the prescribed strength was frequently exceeded, the troops sometimes having over 50 enlisted men. September 5, 1777, on recommendation of the Board of War, Count Casimir Pulaski was appointed chief of cavalry, or, as it was called, "commander of the horse," with the rank of brigadier general, a position which he held until March 28, 1778, when he was authorized to raise his celebrated "Legion," to consist of 68 horse and 200 foot, the former to be armed with lances and the latter to be equipped in the manner of light infantry. Its strength was later increased to 8 companies: 3 line cavalry, 1 chasseurs, 2 line infantry or fusiliers, 1 grenadiers, and 1 supernumerary. The cavalry had pack transportation. The organization of this corps fitted it for a wide variety of service, and for its size it seems to have been an efficient command.

As Pulaski's service was henceforth with his Legion, the cavalry appears to have been without a chief until No-

vember 24, 1778, when Washington was authorized to appoint one of the brigadiers of infantry to command the cavalry.

## V

From 1778 to the end of the war, during which period the principal theatre of operations was in the four Southern states, both sides had real cavalry under able cavalry leaders, of whom the most noted were Tarleton on the British side and Count Pulaski and Lieut. Cols. William Washington and Henry ("Light Horse Harry") Lee on that of the Americans. This period is also featured by the organization of "Partizan corps" of "legions," which were small semi-independent commands. Pulaski's corps was from the start a mixed command of cavalry and infantry, as stated above; those of Lee and Armand originally consisted of 3 cavalry troops each, but Lee's, at least, was later enlarged and had light infantry added.

With the acquisition of real cavalry, able cavalry leaders, and the true cavalry spirit, opportunities to use them were not wanting. Although the bodies of cavalry on both sides were small according to our modern ideas, Lee's Memoirs show that they were actively engaged in delaying actions, raids, advance and rear guard work, and reconnaissances, beside being used with the other arms on the battlefield. Pulaski's Legion by its sixty day march South helped relieve Charleston in May, 1779, and on June 20 took part in the engagement at Stono Ferry. Here, according to Lee, they were "brave but undisciplined," and, though without the personal presence of their leader, they gallantly charged the disorganized British and, when their attack was checked by well directed fire, they retired in good order. At Savannah, October 9, they made a charge, in which Pulaski received his death wound, and took part in the siege. Lee expresses the opinion that had not Pulaski been killed, their charge might have decided the day in favor of the Americans.

At the siege of Charleston in 1780 a detachment of American cavalry stationed at Monck's Corner, 30 miles north of the city, to maintain communications with the North, were surprised and defeated on April 14 by Tarleton, who captured 100 prisoners and 400 horses, which latter he used to replace those of his own command which had been thrown overboard on the voyage from New York. William Washington and some others managed to escape capture by their knowledge of the country. The raiding spirit was especially strong in Tarleton, and by a forced march he successively defeated a force of mountain militia which was mobilizing on the Santee River, on May 6, 1780, and on May 29, at Waxhaws, S. C., the 3rd Virginia Regiment, which was marching to Charleston. On this occasion Tarleton's force of 170 dragoons marched 105 miles in 54 hours. The defeat was undoubtedly due to the failure of Lieut. Col. Buford, the American commander, to use his cavalry properly, for, though he had a small mounted force with him, and his entire command numbered 400, he failed to put out any rear guard or to have the roads in his rear patrolled. In June, 1781, occurred the combined raids to Charlottesville and the Point of



Fork, Va., 50 miles above Richmond. In the former, Tarleton with 180 dragoons and 70 mounted infantry destroyed stores and narrowly missed capturing Governor Jefferson and the entire Virginia Legislature; in the latter, Simcoe with 100 cavalry and 800 infantry forced Steuben to retreat. On June 25, however, a mounted raiding party under Simcoe was successfully attacked by American cavalry at Spencer's Ordinary, and in July, 1781, Tarleton made a march of 400 miles in 15 days across the Virginia mountains to destroy stores which Steuben was collecting, but arrived too late to destroy anything but a quantity of tobacco.

The first major battle in which cavalry played an important part was Camden, August 17, 1780. The only cavalry in the American force was Armand's corps, which fled with the militia, whereupon Cornwallis, seeing that he had only infantry opposed to him, sent Tarleton's cavalry, which had been stationed behind the lines, to attack the American rear and pursue the fugitives. Sumter with his partizans was near at hand, and Tarleton continued his pursuit up the Catawba, surprising Sumter in his camp at Fisher's Creek two days later and, with a loss of 6 killed and 9 wounded, killed 150 and captured 300 of Sumter's men, Sumter himself escaping without hat, coat, or boots.

Placing the cavalry in rear of the second line of infantry was a favorite device of both sides in this campaign. At Cowpens, January 17, 1781, Tarleton, who was in command of the British, placed his main body of cavalry in the second line and a troop of dragoons on each flank. Morgan, the American commander, placed William Washington's cavalry force of 125 under cover of a hill well to the rear. When the dragoons on the British right tried to turn Morgan's left, William Washington came out and drove them back. When Morgan's right was changing front to meet the British left, which outflanked them, Tarleton, thinking the Americans were retreating, ordered his main body of cavalry to come in on his left and charge. Before they could do this, however, Morgan gave his famous order: "Face about and fire once more." The effect of this deliberately aimed volley of the Continentals and the arrival at the same time of Morgan's militia, which, after their first volleys, had retired as ordered and had now made the loop of the battlefield and come up on the American right, threw the British into a panic, of which William Washington was quick to take advantage by a vigorous pursuit. Tarleton, however, managed to collect 14 officers and 40 troopers and with them checked the pursuit long enough for the British force to escape.

The Battle of Guilford Court House, N. C., March 15, 1781, began with a cavalry duel on the preceding day between Lee and Tarleton, in which Lee had the advantage, and on the morning of the battle, Lee after a brisk skirmish with the British advance guard four miles from the battlefield, fell back to the position which Greene had taken up with his infantry in three lines, William Washington's cavalry being posted on the right and Lee's on the left

of the second line, which was 300 yards behind the first and 550 yards in advance of the third, which was on a slight hill. The British cavalry was in rear of their reserve. When the militia of Greene's first line retired and the second line was drawn back, the British made two attacks on his third line, the first of which was repulsed. The second attack, made by the Guards under Gen. O'Hara, routed the 2nd Maryland, a new regiment, but as the Guards advanced, the 1st Maryland wheeled to the left in a flank attack and drove them back. This was William Washington's opportunity, and he joined in the pursuit of the flying Guards. What part the cavalry took in the subsequent withdrawal of Greene's army we do not know.

At Hobkirk's Hill, April 25, 1871, Greene had only William Washington's cavalry, Lee's Legion having been detached. Greene's plan was a double envelopment by the infantry and, when the British were fully committed, to have the cavalry, which was posted behind one flank, go around the British flank and attack their rear. Unfortunately the outcome of the infantry battle gave no opportunity for this plan to be carried out.

Lee again brought on a battle at Eutaw Springs, S. C., September 8, 1781, by attacking a party of British sent out to dig sweet potatoes. Greene drew up his force in two lines, with Lee on the right flank and William Washington in the rear. When the infantry charged the advancing British with the bayonet, Greene sent his cavalry to charge both British flanks. Washington was defeated and captured, but Lee, with the assistance of the infantry, drove all before him until checked by those of the British who had thrown themselves into the "Brick House."

Another feature of the campaign in the South was the extensive use on the American side of mounted riflemen. These were militia, usually from the more remote settlements, who travelled on horseback, but fought dismounted, and thus formed a highly mobile support to the cavalry, with whom they were often joined for independent operations. Tarleton had also at times a few mounted infantry, whom he used in a similar manner. The most noted service of these mounted riflemen on the American side was at the Battle of King's Mountain, October 7, 1780, when a force of 1,100 British regulars and Tory militia took up a defensive position on top of a wooded hill, where they were surrounded by about 1,500 "over mountain men," backwoods hunters who had quickly assembled on horseback, carrying their entire equipment on the saddle. On arrival at the battlefield they dismounted and climbed the hill, pouring in a deadly fire from their rifles, which they well knew how to use with effect. The British lost 224 killed, 163 wounded, and 716 prisoners, as against an American loss of 28 killed and 60 wounded.

At Yorktown the British had for cavalry the Queen's Rangers, enlisted strength 248, under Simcoe, and the British Legion, 192 enlisted, under Tarleton, whereas the Americans had 60 dragoons of Moylan's regiment, 40 of Armand's corps, and the Duke de Lauzun's Legion, 600 strong, of whom half were cavalry. The British cavalry

were stationed at Gloucester, across the river from Yorktown, whence Cornwallis expected they could forage for the besieged army. On October 3, however, while a large part of the garrison of Gloucester, including the cavalry, was out on such a foraging expedition, they were suddenly overtaken by the French cavalry supported by some American militia infantry. Lauzun charged at once and drove Tarleton off the field. He reformed his cavalry, however, under cover of the infantry and advanced, but was checked by the fire of Lieut. Col. Mercer's militia. This was the last time the British cavalry left their fortifications in Gloucester, and ends the war, so far as the mounted forces are concerned.

Although there had been a few mounted men in King

Philip's War and in some of the Spanish expeditions, the Revolution was the first war in which cavalry as such was used on this continent. To be sure, the number of mounted troops on both sides was small, but we must remember that the entire forces engaged in most of the battles of the Revolution seem inconsiderable to us. In that war, however, our ancestors, though without previous experience, developed cavalry from a social organization into a military arm, learned the true cavalry spirit, trained competent cavalry leaders, and set for the mounted arm of the United States Army the example which was to reach its full development in both the Union and Confederate cavalry of 1861-5, and in the mounted troops which in the years following opened up the Western States to civilization.

## Average Age of Public Animals—Horses

### IN THE ARMY:

1927	12½ years
1928	12 years
1929	11 years
1930	11 years
1931	11 years
1932	11½ years
1933	11½ years
1934	12½ years
1935	12 years
1936	11 years
1937	10 years

### BY REGIMENT, 1937:

2d	10 years
3d	10 years
4th	11 years
5th	11½ years
6th	9 years
7th	10½ years
8th	11 years
11th	10½ years
12th	10 plus
14th	9 years
9th	10 years
10th	11 years
School	7 years

### BY NUMBER 1936-1937:

Age	Number
2	6
3	21
4	478
5	645
6	805
7	807
8	633
9	479
10	361
11	389
12	399
13	365
14	404
15	357
16	381
17	295
18	254
19	75
over 20	72
Total	7,379



*Major General Leon B. Kromer*



## A MESSAGE

Upon relinquishing the Office of Chief of Cavalry, I wish to express to all members of the Cavalry my deep appreciation of the whole-hearted friendship and support accorded me during the past four years.

Through our united efforts and the assistance of other interested agencies, our Army has made commendable progress in developing the mobility and power of its Cavalry component. This is in accordance with our own American doctrine which demands a mobile ground combat element to carry out those operations in war requiring more battlefield mobility than that possessed by the main forces of Infantry and Artillery. This has not been the continental European doctrine, the weakness of which was brought out in a leading article in the last issue of the *Cavalry Journal*. The essential difference is that the function of American Cavalry is *to fight*.

There are those who advocate restricting the role of our Cavalry to reconnaissance and covering operations only and emphasize defensive action. Napoleon's advice to budding military leaders was, "read and reread the campaigns of Alexander, Hannibal, Caesar, Gustavus Adolphus, Turenne, Eugene, and Frederick. Take them for your model." We have only to apply that advice and study the records of *Cavalry Combat* during the World War in the various theaters to realize that such a restriction on Cavalry employment and doctrine will not produce mounted units capable of delivering a decisive blow in battle, such as the British Cavalry did at Beersheba and El Mughar and without which victory was impossible.

The function of American Cavalry is to fight, offensively and defensively, either or both as necessary. This is in keeping with our basic doctrine: "Offensive spirit.—Training will be so conducted as to enable the Army to wage offensive warfare. Although training must include thorough instruction in defensive combat, such measures are only a means to the definite end, offensive warfare, and every individual in the military service must be imbued with the spirit of the offensive." (Par. 5, TR 10-5.)

The American high command has the right to expect that the mobile combat ground member of its big fighting team will be organized, trained, and led so as to carry out any mission in any stage of the operations that requires battlefield mobility beyond that inherent in the other members of the team. Battlefield mobility means the ability to move independent of roads and under any conditions of weather and terrain in the area that is subject to enemy action and fire (from the air as well as from the ground)—an area vastly extended in frontage and depth because of the increased effective range of modern means; guns; motors, tanks, and airplanes. Any soldier who has seen our Cavalry units at recent Army and Division maneuvers and at the annual Infantry and Cavalry School maneuvers knows that our Cavalry fulfills this requirement. It is unfortunate that many officers do not have the opportunity to see our Cavalry in action. They would realize the truth of what General Weygand stated, "the role of Cavalry far from being diminished will appear on the morrow, if there is another war, as great as we dreamed it to be in the past. It will hold its importance as long as speed and surprise hold their value on the field of battle."

We are developing organically the mobility and fire power requisite to meet the requirements of modern warfare; our success in this regard will only be of value if we develop the necessary leadership to utilize these assets in the fullest measure in carrying out assigned missions in war. As you well know, the essential characteristics of this leadership, to capitalize on speed and to achieve surprise, are physical and mental mobility, quick decision, bold and courageous action, and sound tactical sense.

I am confident that each one of you, my brother cavalrymen, realizes your individual responsibility in developing this leadership in yourself and in your subordinates—a confidence that, I know, is held also by my successor, Major General John K. Herr, under whose inspiring leadership our Cavalry is bound to make notable progress as a member of the Army Combat Team.

LEON B. KROMER.

# Some Observations on the Attack by Combined Arms

*By Brig. General H. S. Hawkins, U. S. Army, Retired*

One of the greatest problems of modern warfare is how to attack without destructive losses. The power of artillery is so great that often it can alone disrupt the infantry attack. Furthermore, the defending artillery can be assisted by attack aviation unless the latter is neutralized by opposing air force. Of course, the attacking infantry is supported by its own artillery which may neutralize partially the defender's artillery. But such neutralization has never been wholly effective except when the opposing forces have been comparatively small in numbers and have been deployed over rather narrow fronts. It is possible that air force will be used more for the purpose of neutralizing opposing artillery than for attacking infantry. If the attacking army has a preponderance of air force, this may assist materially in diminishing the effect of the artillery of the defending army and thus restore to the attacking infantry some of its former power.

But, the infantry must do something for itself to decrease its losses rather than relying solely on its supporting artillery. Attacking infantry must face not only the fire of the opposing artillery but also the fire of the rifles and machine guns of the opposing infantry. Success in the attack is won when we are able to get our infantry forward to close quarters with the enemy and overcome his resistance by hand-to-hand fighting or the menace of cold steel and other close-combat weapons. Long-range fire by artillery and machine guns does not by itself conquer the enemy. It contributes to success by enabling the riflemen to advance to close quarters. This is what is meant by supporting fire. If the attack is repulsed it is because of the losses inflicted on the advancing riflemen. If the riflemen could advance without loss we would need supporting fire only to decrease the enemy numbers somewhat and impair his morale before our riflemen come to close-combat with him. But our riflemen cannot advance without losses which are too great if we do not use every means of supporting fire and apply every tactical advantage that knowledge and skill and training can provide. Inflicting loss upon the enemy and avoiding unnecessary loss to ourselves is the epitome of combat skill. Neglect of either will bring failure. Some of these measures form the subject of this paper.

One of the measures that will assist riflemen to advance against the enemy is thorough training in the art of using what cover the terrain may afford. This does not yet seem to be fully appreciated in the army. Much has been made of the possibilities in entrenchments. But this is for defense, not attack. The attacking troops must be able to move forward. Every irregularity or accidental cover, no

matter how small or slight, must be utilized. This requires training.

And, also, the attacking troops must know how to avoid open exposed ground which affords no cover at all. This is a matter of training of the commanders of all units, both small and large. Some of the space along the front will inevitably be without cover. Units approaching such spaces should be diverted so as to avoid them, or their commanders should report the situation to the next higher commander who will then have to make the decision as to whether they should proceed to cross the open ground or remain halted to support the adjacent units with their fire, or whether they should side-slip, so to speak, and follow the adjacent units where cover is better. If the latter expedient is decided upon, some of the forward machine guns should be placed in the interval thus created and should take up a fire position in the foremost cover to be found in rear of the open ground and render fire support to the advancing rifle units.

As far as possible, the nature of the ground should be ascertained beforehand by preliminary reconnaissance, air photographs and any other means of information. But, in a long advance, the presence of open spaces without any possibility of cover may not be known before the front line units have reached them. It is then necessary to make the decisions just referred to. If the preliminary reconnaissance has disclosed these open spaces, and they are so deep that a single rush of not over one hundred yards cannot carry the units concerned across them, the troops should be disposed at the outset so as to avoid them. The machine guns, posted in the foremost cover available, may fire across these spaces to support the rifle units advancing in lanes where cover is better, as mentioned before.

Training and practice in these dispositions will make the execution of them far more simple than they appear in the description of them.

But, in order to apply these principles intelligently, the unit commanders, not only of squads, platoons and companies, but also of battalions and regiments, must not remain in command posts where they cannot see ahead and where their only information of the action is through telephones or belated messengers, but must be stationed at points where they can observe and from where they can influence the action quickly. The posts of battalion and regimental commanders are at points of observation near their reserve units. The telephonic stations should be as near the advancing troops as possible and should advance by bounds along the axes of communications. But the commanders themselves, with a very small personnel of

officers and messengers, must be where they can see the ground over which the troops are expected to advance before the troops move over such ground. Since the commanders of regiments and battalions cannot usually see very far in front of the troops, the movements are made by bounds from one position to another as far ahead as the ground to be traversed can be seen clearly. Regimental commanders, even though posted near their reserves, may not be able to observe at all times the ground in front of the leading battalions. But the battalion commanders must be able to go to points where such observation can be made. Both regimental and battalion commanders should be mounted so that they can ride without fatigue to and from points from which the necessary observations can be made. After the desirable observation of the ground in front, or of the action of a front line unit, has been made, the commander can ride quickly back to the message center where he is more sheltered and from where he can send out his orders.

In trench warfare where every foot of the terrain in front is known and the objectives of attack are very limited, command posts can be more retired and organized as now prescribed.

Of course, when the distance to reach the enemy is very long, or he is falling back slowly and we don't know just where he will make a stand, covering detachments out in front will assist the commanders in ascertaining the nature of the ground in good time. Covering detachments sent out by battalion commanders, or sometimes by regimental commanders, must be used instead of platoon scouts. Platoon scouts may assist the platoon commanders, although this is doubted very seriously, but it is the battalion and regimental commanders who must be informed beforehand as to the nature of the ground that their commands are about to traverse. The leaders of covering detachments report direct to these commanders, and the latter, mounted, follow their covering detachments at convenient distances and indicate the bounds that the covering detachments shall take. When the troops come under aimed fire of enemy small arms, neither covering detachments nor scouts can be used. Nor are they desirable. The troops are now committed to fixed directions of advance in their battle formations. The regimental and battalion commanders drop back to post themselves near their reserve units, and from there ride to points from which they can observe. They must from now on rely on what they themselves can see of the ground between them and the enemy, although they may be assisted by reports from front line platoon and company commanders. They should dispose their troops so as to use the cover the ground affords, as has been indicated, with the object of getting the riflemen forward to within three hundred yards of the enemy before firing and without being seen except while darting individually from cover to cover by little bounds as short as the terrain will permit. Attempts to fire from successive fire positions of riflemen at ranges greater than three hundred yards result only in exposing the riflemen too much and cause losses that will stop the

attack or, at best, make success very costly. The hostile machine gunners in position of defense, firing obliquely at troops on the right or left, but covered immediately in front from both observation and fire, have every advantage over attacking riflemen until the latter get within three hundred yards where they can use their rifles effectively because they can see what to shoot at.

Of course, these precautions are not as efficacious against artillery fire as against fire of small arms. But they will give a measure of protection without which the combined effect of hostile artillery fire and hostile small arms fire may prove too much for the attacking troops.

So, in view of the advantage of the defense over the attack, we must take advantage of every possible expedient. Skillful use of cover, avoidance of open spaces which have no cover, and supporting fire from machine guns placed so as to fire across the open spaces and through the intervals between attacking columns which are advancing in lanes where there is at least some cover, are the measures that must be taken by attacking infantry. In comparatively small engagements where the enemy front is short, machine guns can be placed on the flanks and between the holding attack and the enveloping attack. Cavalry, when acting alone, attacks usually in this way.

Powerful artillery support is necessary in all large engagements. Our supporting artillery may not be able to neutralize the fire of the hostile artillery, but it should be able to weaken the fire of the defensive small arm units and make their counter-attack more difficult. Light cannon and mortars may be assigned to the regiment and organized into separate units so that they can be attached to battalions or controlled by the regimental commander as circumstances and experience seem to indicate. When properly handled they should be very useful.

We may now add a brief discussion as to the assistance to attacking infantry that may be rendered by the cavalry and the tanks. It is well known that losses can be reduced materially by wide deployment and a high rate of speed during the advance toward the enemy. The advantage of speed has led to the creation of tanks in which soldiers may advance over fire swept areas with speeds much faster than attacking infantry can attain. Added to this speed we have a powerful armament and a heavy armour. Thus equipped, tank units can be of great assistance in special situations. But it has been shown that their limitations are very great and that, although they may be a valuable adjunct, they cannot replace infantry. Nor can they replace cavalry.

On account of its cross-country speed, cavalry can make mounted attacks over exposed ground with less loss than infantry in some situations. But cavalry, like the tanks, has its limitations. Its employment is by no means so limited as that of tanks, and if employed skillfully, it can be of great assistance to the infantry attack. In fact, like the artillery, it is indispensable.

When backed up by infantry following directly in rear, cavalry can often attack mounted over exposed ground and hold the ground gained until the infantry can



arrive to take it over. This has been done with great success especially when the use of cavalry came as a surprise. Cavalry can hold the ground it has gained for considerable periods of time. At a pinch, it can hold for an indefinite period. This enables it to attack and hold key points, thus assisting the infantry to advance all along the line in that vicinity. The cavalry can then be withdrawn until demands of a similar nature may require its use again. If tanks can move across country with sufficient speed they might precede the cavalry in such enterprises. But tanks acting alone will not be able to render such services because they cannot consolidate their gains. They must be so closely followed by infantry or cavalry that their speed of advance must not be greater than that of the following troops. When preceding infantry they will lose that very advantage they may possess in regard to speed. In trench warfare situations with the attack confined to very limited objectives, this difficulty would not apply because, even though they advanced with speed they could not get very far ahead of the infantry.

But, supported closely by cavalry, the tanks can advance as fast as they please. The only question is whether they can move fast enough across country to keep in front of the cavalry.

Sometimes, the infantry columns can advance in lanes where there is some cover while the cavalry can attack mounted over the exposed ground between these lanes. This would prevent the machine guns from using these open spaces for fire support to the infantry as has been suggested. But there will be situations where it may be of more advantage to attack with cavalry and tanks through exposed lanes than to use them for machine gun fire. This would probably be the case in attacking key points protected by wide coverless ground. This combination of infantry and cavalry columns would have to be well timed. The cavalry would not be launched into its attack until the progress of the infantry attack might indicate the right moment to put in the cavalry. And of course, the presence of such obstacles as barbed wire entanglements would prevent the using of cavalry in this way unless it could be preceded by tanks.

When it is possible to attack the enemy in flank, cavalry can assist the infantry very greatly. In this case it would use mounted or dismounted action in accordance with varying conditions, and tanks might or might not be able to assist. But large cavalry units with such missions should, like the infantry, take advantage of every assistance that can be rendered by artillery, tanks, machine guns, and even special infantry units organized for such purposes and attached to large cavalry commands.

One of the limitations of cavalry in its rôle of assisting the infantry is that it is seldom numerous enough to undertake tasks that it might perform otherwise. Therefore, it must be used here and there as conditions seem to demand and to permit. It has other duties in addition to the more direct support of infantry in the attack. Army covering forces, delaying forces, forces filling gaps between army corps or between armies, forces engaged in the parallel

pursuit, forces blocking the retreat of the enemy, seizing strategic positions, all these forces should be composed mostly of cavalry.

But, in assisting the infantry more directly in its attack, the cavalry should either be sent out on the flanks or held in reserve to be used as already indicated and as opportunity affords or necessity demands.

Thus, it does not appear that any other kind of troops can relieve the infantry of its task in making the main attack. But, supported by a powerful artillery with the co-operation of air force, and assisted by a numerous cavalry and tanks, the infantry may make these attacks without disastrous losses if it is well trained in the use of the terrain. In fact, all of the other arms and services, the engineers, signal troops, medical troops and the supply troops, must study the use of terrain in performing their tasks.

If the enemy has been able to place himself in a defensive position where the terrain along his entire front is open and exposed to his fire for a depth of more than a few hundred yards without affording any cover for advancing troops, we should decline to attack him there. Neither the tanks nor the cavalry will be numerous enough to attack on so wide and deep a front, even if immediately supported by infantry. The enemy must be turned out of such a position by maneuver. Even though the enemy is able, by the use of interior lines, to meet any movement on his right or left, we may at least place the combat on terrain that is more favorable for attack. Failing in this, we shall certainly have a stalemate unless the enemy is very inferior in quality or numbers or both. But a position such as this is very rare for a large force. Practically it never happens. Small forces in such positions can be turned out by maneuver or by using cavalry and tanks backed up by infantry. This occurred in the Palestine Campaign several times.

Summing up these principles, we may state them as follows.

The infantry attack must be made skillfully. Skillful use of cover. Avoidance of ground without cover. Changes of dispositions of troops in accordance with the terrain as the advance progresses. Careful observation of the terrain in front of the troops before each bound that they make. Regimental and battalion commanders posted near their reserve units and moving, mounted when possible, from one point of observation to another as the advance progresses so that they can observe the ground and influence the action. Telephone stations in rear of and as near the reserve units as practicable, moving by bounds to follow the advance. The withholding of rifle fire until the riflemen are close to the enemy. The use of special weapons like light cannon and mortars organized in a separate regimental unit so that they can be massed or attached to battalions as circumstances may dictate. Fire support not only by a powerful artillery but also by using machine guns in the intervals between attacking columns. The utilization of coverless lanes of approach toward the enemy for machine gun fire support and not for advance unless cavalry

and tanks are using these lanes for special purposes. The use of covering detachments, and not platoon scouts, until the troops are under aimed fire of small arms. The skillful use of cavalry and tanks in assisting the infantry attack. And finally, the use of heavy rifle fire from a fire position affording cover as near to the enemy as can be attained before making the assault.

We can terminate this discussion with the assault, but the assault does not terminate these actions. Rear lines of the enemy must be taken in their turn, and measures must be provided for dealing with the counter attack which may always be expected if the enemy makes a stubborn resistance.

In conclusion, it may be noted that the terrain is the most important consideration we have to make in the selection of our tactical methods. We have referred to regimental and battalion commanders because it is they who must dispose and adjust their commands to the peculiari-

ties of the terrain both before and during the attack, and they are the highest commanders who can watch the ground immediately in front of their troops as they progress. Division, Corps and Army Commanders have the same obligation and duty to consider the terrain. And its importance is as great in their calculations and dispositions as it is for lower command. But the higher commanders cannot watch the ground immediately in front of their troops. They must get their information from maps, photographs, and reports beforehand; and, having launched the attack they must depend on lower commanders to use the terrain to the best advantage.

But an army commander should know enough about the terrain in his front not to expect all his divisions to advance at the same rate of speed, but to use his corps and divisions and the different arms of the service in accordance with the advantages and opportunities the terrain has to offer.



## The American Army and a Soldier

The greatest asset of our Army, as with our Navy, is the democratic nature of its personnel. They come from all walks of American life. It has no caste—it belongs to and comes from the people of the nation. Its leaders spring from all classes and the most outstanding have won their way to the highest rank from the surroundings of the average American family, as exemplified by the greatest living American soldier, General Pershing. I find it im-

possible to talk about the Army without paying my respects to and expressing my affection for him, in which I know you join. There was not a soldier in France who did not feel Pershing's character and force. The aggressive spirit and the indomitable "will to win" of the American Forces, reflected his courage and confidence. He led our greatest army to success in foreign lands and is to us a heritage of the true American soldier.

MAJOR GENERAL HUGH A. DRUM, U. S. A.

# ONE CAVALRY\*

By Major R. W. Grow, Cavalry

Ever since that momentous day in 1931 when General MacArthur said that the term "Mechanized Force" was abhorrent to him, and that Cavalry and other arms would adopt mechanization when and where practicable, we have been hearing references to "horse" cavalrymen and "mechanized" cavalrymen. In my humble opinion it is high time to drop all this controversy between horse and mechanized and get together as *cavalrymen*.

The horse was essential to Cavalry in the past. The horse is essential to Cavalry today. In my opinion the horse will be essential to Cavalry beyond the lifetime of any man living. Why? In this day and age for one reason and one only—battlefield mobility (to avoid argument I am willing to extend this sphere of action to the entire theater of operations; I want to eliminate "strategic" mobility *behind* the lines, for the horse is not the best answer there.)

The watchword for Cavalry is mobility and the ability to fight mounted, dismounted, or both at the same time. Quick thinking, quick action, opportunity on a little scale and on a big scale, mental mobility, physical mobility, and punch. Association with the horse made Cavalry possible. Nothing else could do it. Today association with the horse is more important than ever to stimulate the mounted spirit. I say more than ever because the daily existence of the American citizen does not include, as it once did, contact with the horse. May the horse ever remain a living stimulus to the mental and physical development that makes Cavalry!

Now, stop and face the facts. There are iron horses that provide battlefield mobility and from which men can fight mounted, dismounted, or both. Neither the four-footed horse nor the steel horse, in themselves, make Cavalry. Both provide the means by which men properly organized and trained can become Cavalry. Cavalry stands above its means. It is an Arm with a definite rôle in war. Its continued existence depends upon its ability (and willing-

ness) to grasp every available means to increase its battlefield mobility and power. Leaders in cavalry development today must not be fettered by tradition if the battle leaders of tomorrow are to maintain the prestige of the arm.

Let us be horsemen. Yes. But, above all, let us be Cavalrymen. To be pointed out as a "horse" cavalryman savors too much of hidebound tradition. To be pointed out as a "mechanized" cavalryman savors too much of a scatter-brained enthusiast without his feet on the ground. The great majority of cavalry officers today are neither old-fashioned or wild dreamers. They have their feet on the ground. They recognize the rôle of cavalry in war, and are boldly (as befits cavalrymen) but carefully weighing the means at hand and the possibilities of its future development to make better Cavalry.

Is it not time to remove the tendency toward a cleavage in our branch? There is one Cavalry; one Chief of Cavalry; one Cavalry School; one Cavalry Board; and one cavalry doctrine. It is a progressive Cavalry imbued with a glorious heritage and forever seeking, finding, seizing greater mobility, greater power.

Would Sheridan have been a "horse" cavalryman today? Would Stuart? Would Forrest? Can we imagine those realists, those masters of mobility and combat, failing to grasp the iron horse and fitting him into the cavalry scheme of things? They were not bound by tradition. They accepted every known lesson from the past, but they applied them to a very real present and utilized every known means at their command.

Buick says "When better cars are built, Buick will build them." Cannot we well say: "When better horses are bred (or machined), Cavalry will use them?" Let's not be "horse" cavalrymen or "mechanized" cavalrymen. Let's be CAVALRYMEN.

\*EDITOR'S NOTE: This article was submitted to the CAVALRY JOURNAL to the Editor. The thought is considered so timely as to warrant its publication under a separate heading.

## THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION,

1624 H Street, N.W., Washington, D. C.

Gentlemen:

Please send me \_\_\_\_\_ copies of CAVALRY COMBAT.

I (am) (am not) a member of The United States Cavalry Association.

(Strike out one)

(I enclose check for \$\_\_\_\_\_ in full payment.)

(Please bill me when books are mailed.)

(Strike out one)

(Date)

(Place)

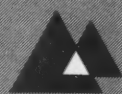
(Signature)

(Rank and Organization)





# Cavalry Combat



## USE AS A TEXTBOOK

By COLONEL J. M. WAINWRIGHT, 3rd Cavalry

The Third Cavalry at Fort Myer has found *Cavalry Combat* a most valuable textbook for use in connection with Officers' Schools conducted at this post.

The book has been assigned, chapter by chapter, to the various officers of the regiment, who in turn study and digest such assigned portions.

They then, by the use of maps and notes, explain the various actions that have taken place in their assigned chapters, briefly commenting on the interesting phases, both good and bad, that have characterized that particular kind of combat.

We have found this to be a tremendously interesting manner in which to conduct a tactical school, for, as everyone knows, hypothetical problems are sometimes inclined to become a bit stodgy. *Cavalry Combat* cites actual engagements and experiences which are valuable, not only from a historical standpoint but also for intensive tactical study and analyzation.

This method of instruction has the added value of requiring the individual officer to which the weekly assignment has been made, to act as an instructor in Tactics by causing him to stand on his feet, face the class and expound his subject. It requires him to be absolutely familiar with all phases of his particular discourse by being prepared to answer any and all question that are put to him and which concern the lesson assignment.

\* \* \*

The 305th Cavalry, Philadelphia, reports: Our noon luncheons and meetings at the Sansom House are made extremely interesting by the continuation of the series of

lectures given by individual reserve officers and based on the book *Cavalry Combat*. This book, published by the United States Cavalry Association, certainly depicts cavalry action in its most varied form, and should be read by all reserve officers who are interested in outstanding cavalry operations in the World War.

### SECOND EDITION

Many reviewers and countless letters state that *Cavalry Combat* is the outstanding study of cavalry in current literature. Not only does it portray actions of absorbing interest, but carries analytical discussions involving reasons for success or failure of those actions. Here is cavalry in reconnaissance, security, attack, counterattack, pursuit, defense, filling a gap in the line and generally fulfilling its time honored missions under modern conditions. *To fight war, one must know war: here is cavalry in war at its best.*

The remaining copies of the first edition are now limited. The type is still set up, but whether a second edition will be printed has not been determined at this time. A second edition will depend on the sales of the copies now on hand. Demand for this volume, of vital interest to cavalrymen, will grow with the years; a military library is incomplete without it. Once the type is broken up, a new edition will be an impossibility. *Do we or do we not print a second edition?* The answer to that question rests with the members of the Association. Approximately one-third of our membership now possess a copy of the book. Procrastinate no longer; expedite your order; it may assist us in analyzing future demands and arriving at a solution on a second edition.

TODAY—ORDER YOUR COPY  
OF  
CAVALRY COMBAT

Order Blank on Page 150

(See Inside Front Cover)

---

## Special Activities

---

### A System of Remount Training Within the Cavalry Regiment

By Hamilton H. Howze, 1st Lieutenant, Sixth Cavalry

This brief account of a system of remount training is offered, not to bring to light any new theories or methods, but merely to set down and explain a manner of application of the principles taught by the Cavalry School. It is believed that the system here described has proven its worth by the results obtained, which leads to the hope that this account may be of value to the officer suddenly presented with the job of training a large shipment of green horses.

A total of 120 remounts has been received by the Sixth Cavalry during the summer and early fall of 1937; all were shipped from Fort Reno, Oklahoma. Brands included the D, P, R, S, and H.

Before the horses are released from quarantine, before any training is begun, Troop Commanders are permitted, by Regimental Headquarters, to select remounts for their respective organizations. Assignments of men to the remount detail are made so that men from each troop train that troop's horses. These two provisions have the excellent effect of causing the Troop Commanders to send good riders to the detail, and of causing the riders to have more interest in their mounts. Each rider has two horses to train.

Remounts are stabled in the troops to which assigned, rather than in a regimental remount stable. This prevents the necessity for the additional detail of a stable sergeant, stable orderly, horseshoer, and, in my belief, presents no disadvantages. All troop commanders manage to find room to put the remounts in single stalls. Noncommissioned officers of the remount detail carry the recommendations of the officer-in-charge as to bedding, feeding, and shoeing, to their respective troops, which suggestions are followed without exception. Throughout their period of training the remounts appear well groomed. The grooming is done by the troop detail under the sole supervision of the N.C.O.

Since the Veterinarian will not release the remounts for training until all traces of colds and shipping fever are gone, the horses come down in dribbles. This increases the difficulty of keeping all mounts neatly categorized according to length of training, although every effort is made to do so. However, it is found practicable and not disadvantageous to let horses in two or three different stages of training follow the same routine exercise for the first part of the period; in the latter part, the green horses continue the slow exercises while the older ones progress to work at the gallop, etc. This, of course, is convenient

only to a limited degree, but it does make it possible for mounts of four weeks training, say, and those of one week's to be worked at the same place under supervision of the same instructor.

A very unfortunate situation exists (and presumably exists in every regiment) wherein it is necessary for troop commanders to change their details frequently. This has been particularly true in this regiment, since the period of remount training coincides accurately with pistol practice and the range season. No remedy is to be hoped for. Many troopers new on the remount detail must be taught a considerable amount of horsemanship, so the instructor must start afresh upon each change in personnel. His best bet is to try to keep the same N.C.O.'s, to help him out.

It is best to insist that regulation trooper's equipment be used in throughout. Particularly it is advisable not to permit any flat saddles, since there are not enough of these to go around. Their issue would cause some members of the detail to feel at a disadvantage, and those saddles so issued would not be available to troop-jumping squads, where they are much in demand.

#### TRAINING SCHEDULE

A mimeographed training schedule, similar to the one reproduced here, is issued to each member of the remount detail. It is greatly to be doubted whether he pays much attention to it, and there is no reason that he must. Its purpose is to act as a guide to the officer and to the non-commissioned officers, and to satisfy the mild curiosity of the private as to whither he progresses. Note that no days, nor hours, are specified, but merely a listing of the subjects to be covered each week. This permits a comfortable freedom for the instructor, allows him to prescribe (first thing each morning, at an assembly of his N.C.O.'s) the work to be done that day more accurately according to the progress of training, the state of the weather, the changing schedule of calls, etc.

#### SCHEDULE OF REMOUNT TRAINING, 6TH CAVALRY

**NOTE:** Only *new* subjects are listed for each week. Having once been taken up, instruction in each subject will be continued until completion of training.

#### Week No. INSTRUCTION

1. Longeing — gentling — saddling — mounting — walk and slow trot.

2. Straight lines and turns, circles, changes of gaits—mounting on off side—work in flock outside—conditioning course.
3. Riding hall movements—short work at gallop inside—close order drill.
4. Extended order drill—movement of individuals away from group—leading on halter shank—leading on bridle, both on near and off side.
5. Gallop outside—accustoming to mounted pistol fire.
6. Backing—double snaffle bit—mounted pistol.
7. Bit and bridoon—carrying rifle—carrying saddlebags—dismount to fight on foot and leading of three horses.
8. Work on graduation ride.
9. Review, and extension of 8.
10. Same as 9; graduation ride.

The hours of training are short. The remounts progress very satisfactorily with this amount of training each day, the interest of the rider does not lag through too much time in the saddle, and he is given ample time to groom. Each of the two remounts is ridden in the morning, for one and a quarter hours. One of the two, alternating, is ridden in the afternoon on Mondays, Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Fridays, for an hour and a half. The afternoon work is little more than exercise and relaxation, the riders most frequently being permitted to work individually, although cautioned to ride in pairs when moving cross-country. It is well to allow about ten minutes for grazing.

#### TRAINING PRACTICES

(No attempt is made here to prescribe methods of training. Cavalry School teachings are followed throughout, as set forth in the book *Horsemanship and Horsemaster-ship*).

Work on the longe is confined to the walk and trot, and is very intensive. Most mounts longe satisfactorily (to provide exercise) within the first half hour's instruction.

Mounts are saddled the third day, and, in the case of the quieter one, are mounted. The officer-in-charge, or a noncommissioned officer, helps each man saddle, and holds his horse, by the longe, as he mounts. All except the most difficult horses are mounted the fourth day. Horses that have been through one of the remount depots are quiet, as a group. A very few of the 120 have given promise, at first, of becoming habitually unmanageable, but in no case have the real wildness persisted beyond the middle of the second week.

Excess energy is discouraged by a reduction of fuel. There is no hesitation in appreciably cutting down on feed for really difficult animals, and the result of the reduction is apparent in a day or so. Not many riders can subdue a dangerous horse, by sheer rough-riding strength, without resorting to methods that will develop bad habits and defenses which persist long after the horse is broken. It is felt that the quicker, easier, and gentler method—cutting down feed—is far the better. In this group of

remounts, in one case only, has the feed been cut to this extent: one pound of grain per meal, the hay ration halved. Other, less severe, reductions, have been quite numerous. Never has the reduction been continued more than two weeks, for it has not been necessary. However, there should be no compunction in cutting more severely if it means the difference between a suitable mount and a useless one.

Members of the detail require instruction in equitation, of course, but it is found that they react better if that instruction reaches them by way of the horse, so to speak. It is more interesting for the rider to be told how to teach the horse, than to be taught how to conduct himself. If he learns how to train the horse to turn, stop, change gaits, etc., by the proper and accurate application of the aids, the rider's seat develops as a matter of course. Corrections are made therefore, upon the rider's application, rather than upon his position. This has a good effect upon his equitation, and at the same time flatters him somewhat by not making him suffer constant criticism aimed at his previous training. He acknowledges ignorance about training a green horse, but is inclined to resent being told that he looks like a sack of oats.

The application of the hands requires the most attention from the instructor. The rider is taught to maintain a constant, gentle feel on the horse's mouth, at all gaits. He learns the lesson, eventually, but the instructor will find himself sounding off, "Mind your hands!" very frequently, sometimes without bothering to see whether or not anyone in the group is actually misusing them. A good point to tell the soldier: "Look at the reins. If they ever go slack, then taut, then slack, your hands are not acting as they should."

Throughout training, it is impressed upon the rider the necessity of keeping the horse "squared away." To this end, posting is done always on the outside diagonal; the horse is always put into the gallop on a specified lead, whether outside or in the pen; the horse is led as much on the near side as on the off; and mounting and dismounting the off-side is given much stress. No difficulty whatever is encountered.

Work in the pen is broadened to include all riding hall movements, with stress upon the dress. It is here that the instructor is able to give best direction. Accuracy, gentleness, are the keynotes. Instruction upon the application of the aids is constant—including (without fail) those for the simplest movements. The horse is schooled to include the gallop departs (always from the slow trot). He must stand motionless for mounting from either side. The rider is seldom made to go without benefit of stirrups. It is to be remembered that the rider does not enjoy this phase much at best, so it is well to vary work as much as possible, to give frequent rests, but to demand the strictest concentration when not at rest. The instructor works better dismounted.

Pistol work is started in the pen, continued outside. The dismounted man with the gun starts at some distance away, works forward slowly, firing blanks. Horses, well



worked down previously, keep at the trot. It is best to proceed very slowly, and trips around the pistol course must be repeated day after day after day. Considerable ammunition is required (about 50 rounds per horse if you can get it). Very few horses fail to become suitable for record firing.

Each horse receives the majority of his training outside, and for the majority of that training he is a member of a group. It is only on leaving and returning to stables, or during actual instruction in close order drill, that the horses are in formation. The normal (but varied) routine follows: column of two's, 200 yards; irregular flock formation, 2½ miles; instruction (close order drill, pistol, individual work, or whatever it may be) for whatever time is available; again flock formation for the 2½ miles home. The flock is spread as wide as it conveniently can be. The instructor commands right and left abouts, turns, and circles. The horse soon learns to pay no attention to the others, loses any tendency to become herd-bound. Horses that are difficult at the start are given the advantage of being put in the lead, are gradually worked back in the group. If they don't respond to this treatment, feed is cut. Further training to avoid herd-boundness is the exercise requiring the horses to leave the standing group, one at a time. Individual training in the afternoon helps further. Cross-country work includes galloping only after the horse is well grounded in the gallop in the pen. As before stated, all horses in the group are required to take the same, specified lead.

Instruction in close order drill, and in carrying the required equipment, consists merely of doing it. Be careful only not to neglect any part of this phase, and to caution gentleness on the part of the riders. Teaching horses to lead in sets of four is difficult. Start by having each horse, as linked, led at a walk, the men gradually dropping out, to walk on the flank and urge the mounts along. Each Number 4 gives the most of his attention to encouraging the horses ahead, rather than to his own.

One week of work on the double snaffle bit is given prior to the switch to the bit and bridoon. The curb chain is adjusted one link looser than normal, at first. The rider is caused to force his horse to accept the curb, at constant pressure, with the same frankness as he does the snaffle. No attempt is made to force the horse to flex at the pole, beyond that necessary to slow or change the gait. Three reasons are advanced for this omission: (1) The riders are not up to its proper execution; (2) the horses are not ready for it within the ten weeks' training; (3) a properly flexed horse, in the hands of the normal Cavalry trooper, after return to duty, would either drop his chin to his chest, or lose the flexion altogether.

Instruction in jumping is very slight, because not enough time is available within the ten weeks, and because it is inadvisable to jump young horses too much. All horses are required to negotiate, a few times only, small natural logs and rails and ditches, the maximum height about 2' 9". Almost no refusals result, even at the first attempt at a new obstacle.

Throughout the period of training, a gradual development of balance is apparent in each remount. That balance is not to be confused with collection, as applied to the school-horse—neither is it sought after in the same manner. Balance is the by-product of every training exercise, although its development is furthered by the proper action of the legs in driving the horse forward onto the hands, and by the corrective measures applied to the horse, from the start, to overcome any sloppiness in his carriage. Balance is evidenced, towards the end of training, by a rhythmic smoothness in the gaits, and by an appearance of attentiveness when the horse is at work.

#### THE GRADUATION RIDE

The idea of a "graduation ride," so called, seems at first to be a little too grandiose for regimental remounts. It has been found to have excellent results, however, for these reasons: the ride is comprehensive, and so causes the instructor to cover all phases of training, practice for it uncovering all weak spots; riders, knowing the ride, know what is expected of their horses, and so direct their effort more accurately; and, it is a proof of training, a pointed indication, to troop officers and noncommissioned officers, of results obtainable with quiet handlings.

Members of the detail strive the harder if the regimental commander and some members of his staff watch the ride. The more rank, the better.

Note that on the schedule of training, two weeks of the ten are devoted to review and practice for the ride. This is not a false policy, for that practice is, in itself, the best training, and, as previously said, causes the instructor and riders to pick up the loose ends.

A brief description of the movements of the ride is given herewith. There is no doubt that it can be further improved, made even more comprehensive. From 20 to 40 horses go through at the same time. Horses carry rifle and raincoat.

1. From line to column of trooper, at the slow trot, on a very large track.
2. "By fours by the left flank," until the whole platoon is in column of fours at large intervals and distances. At the command of the leader, the turns, circles, abouts (all at slow trot); a halt, four steps back, slow trot from the halt.
3. Track to the left. Gallop departs from the slow trot, first on left, then on right lead.
4. Assembly in line, and all movements of close order drill, at trot. The dismount to fight on foot, and movements of led horses at trot.
5. Assembly in line at halt. Prepare to dismount, and dismount. Each of horse's four feet is picked up. Mount, and form ranks. On the off side, prepare to dismount, and dismount. Rider puts on raincoat, and, on the off side, mounts.
6. Squads move out individually (at about 2 minute intervals). Flock formation is taken (accurately), and the gallop for about 300 yards distance. Column of

trooper, at 35 yards. Each trooper takes two jumps, about 2' 9". Gallop continues to mounted pistol course.

7. Squad halts, assembles, and raincoats are removed. Each trooper gallops the mounted pistol course, using 6 blanks.

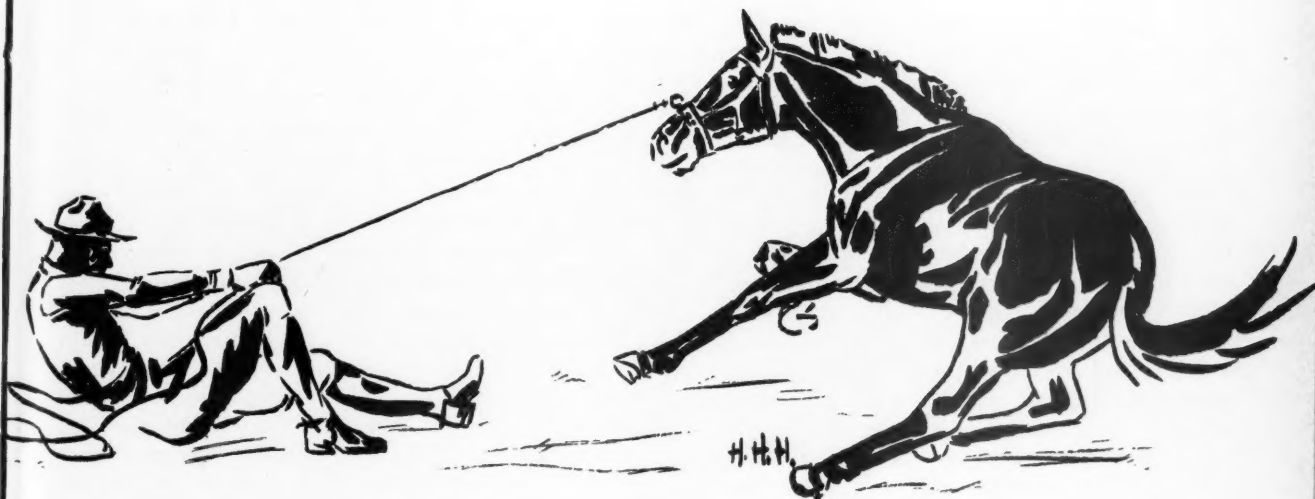
8. Platoon assemblies, by squads.

(The time taken for the ride depends considerably on the number of remounts. A platoon of 32 horses takes about 50 minutes.)

Of course, the mere adoption of an ambitious program of training does not guarantee the production of a fine group of Cavalry mounts. It does, however, lend interest to the routine, and the demands of the graduation ride

prevent omissions. Following this program, there has been no feeling of "pushing" the horses. It has not yet become necessary to prolong the training period of any horse, but there is no sentiment against so doing if it be thought advisable.

All in all, the job of training a large group of remounts is an illuminating as well as a pleasant one. Most surprising was the revelation that it is not an hereditary, ingrained characteristic of the private soldier that causes him to jerk his horse to a halt, or to kick in his slats to produce an increase in the gait: once the man discovers that it is simpler to persuade than to force, he develops a very commendable interest in what is, to him, a brand-new endeavor!



# Hockey à Cheval

By Reginald Hargreaves

## The Story of the Early Days of Polo

A Huntsman of the older school will always hold to it, quite justifiably from his own rather circumscribed point of view, that the man who hunts to ride is of no use to any pack. His business, he will aver, is to learn to ride to hunt. In the same way, there are many who will insist that the Cavalryman's contention that consistently to play polo not only ensures a firmer seat and greater command of movement in the saddle, but materially fosters the faculty of judgment, is no more than a piece of very specious special pleading. Yet some of the greatest Cavalry leaders of the last half century have done everything in their power to encourage the pursuit; the cultivation of which by the Officers under their command they regarded as an integral part of their training.

Yet the practice of polo by any but the Eastern races is a thing of comparatively recent date.

It is generally agreed that the game originated with the Persians many hundreds of years ago. In fact, so early as the sixth century A.D. it had become so universally popular that the women of the country were indulging in the pastime with as much enthusiasm as their men folk. Nizami, one of the sixth century Court poets, gives a lyrical account of one such match between two teams of feminine enthusiasts; and there are constant references to participation in the sport by members of both sexes in Persian manuscripts of the tenth, eleventh and twelfth centuries.

The game found its way into popular favour outside the rather limited confines of Persia through the instrumentality of the hardy horse dealers of the northern provinces of India, returning from the sale of their bloodstock at the horse fairs for which Iran was at that time famous. The appeal of the innovation was instant and widespread; and in its enthusiasm and devotion to the pastime, India soon came to vie with Persia itself, if not actually to outdistance it. A story is told, incidentally, of one Princely devotee of the game who found the daylight hours, however early the start he made, all too short for indulgence in the pursuit which so enthralled him. Not to be thwarted in his urge to continue practice even after darkness had fallen, this tireless enthusiast gave orders for the field of play to be illumined by the men of his body-guard, spaced out at close intervals and individually furnished with fiercely blazing torches. Then, with the goals similarly illumined, and with a ball of some combustible material which, set afire, would just about last out a *chukka*, he was enabled to continue play far into the night, until sheer exhaustion called a halt to exertions which had

continued almost uninterruptedly for from twelve to fourteen hours.

Europeans owe their introduction to the game to the inhabitants of Manipur, a small State in the Northeastern corner of India. This was round about 1854; from which time the relaxation was pursued with vigour and enthusiasm by mixed teams of "Feringhees" and native Manipuris. The first European polo club was formed in Silchar, in the District of Cachar, in 1859, by Captain Robert Stewart, the then Deputy-Commissioner, Cachar; with a membership made up by another Officer, Captain Joe Sherer, and a few planters from the scattered tea estates of Cachar and Sylhet.

But Stewart was not to be allowed to remain alone in his glory for long. By 1864 the Calcutta Polo Club had come into lusty being, with an ever-expanding membership amongst both soldiers and civilians. A photograph of some of the original members portrays a portentously whiskered group of stalwarts, stick in hand, heavily booted and spurred, and mounted on stumpy little Himalayan ponies, bearing infinitely more resemblance to the Shetland variety than to the polo pony of today.

Thereafter, it was not long before a trial of the game was attempted in England. The description of a match as it was played by a couple of mixed teams in Manipur had found its way into the columns of a weekly journal called *The Field*. This report had come to the notice of Lord Valentia, an Officer of the 11th Hussars, the famous "Cherry Pickers" of the charge of the Light Brigade fame; and together with two brother Officers of the same Regiment he puzzled out sufficient of the working conditions and rules governing the game to render a tentative effort at its reproduction possible. Teams were picked, and one dull afternoon midway through the year of 1870, on a piece of waste ground below Caesar's Camp at Aldershot, the first game of polo ever to be played West of Suez was duly fought out. As polo it would probably have made the present day exponent indulge in a rather pitying smile, since the Officers performing rode their ordinary chargers, while hockey sticks were used to belt a billiard ball rather aimlessly from one end of the ground to the other.

However, as an old-time journalist would have put it, "a good time was enjoyed by all;" and there was obviously enough "to" the pastime to warrant its further cultivation. Moreover, in the following year the 9th Lancers, who had been experimenting at their own station of Hounslow, added considerably to the amenities of the



game by introducing an especially made and properly designed stick, and by substituting for the original truant from the billiards table a carefully whitened cricket ball. Naturally, the Aldershot pioneers, sponsored by Colonel Valentine Baker, commanding the 10th Hussars, were not slow in sending a challenge to the Hounslow practitioners, which was as promptly accepted. The two teams met and, as was only fitting with such "veterans" as the Hussars, with their extra weeks of practice, the challengers emerged as victors with three goals to one.

By this time enthusiasm for this novel test of straight hitting and equestrian skill had become general throughout the army; and a combined team of Hussars and Lancers met and defeated a side put into the field by the Household Cavalry, at Richmond Park.

By the midsummer of 1872, polo was being tried out by practically every Cavalry regiment on home station in England, and was even beginning to attract attention outside the somewhat restricted circumambient of the Service, at first as is so often the case!—public opinion was inclined to scoff. "Those of our readers," remarked the writer in a sporting print published in July of 1872, "who have not yet made an acquaintance with the new game called 'polo' can best form an idea of it from its second description, 'hockey on horseback.'"

In truth, at that early stage in proceedings, it was very little more. All the *nuances* of the "science" which were later to distinguish polo at its best, were as yet unde-

veloped, if not undreamed of; the tactics of the game, the nicely-calculated interplay which can only be the outcome of perfect team work, were completely subordinated to a single-hearted lust on the part of each and every performer to beat up the ball as hard and as often as he could, preferably in the direction of the opponents' goal, but anyway before the next fellow got at it! This may have made for briskness, but was hardly calculated to ensure a brilliant exhibition of technique.

However, "what we've never seen we never miss;" and the onlookers of 1872 were quite content in the knowledge that they were witnessing something vaguely thrilling and—much more important!—something that was indubitably new! For by this time, polo had begun to attract an increasingly distinguished audience; and the final *cachet* of approval came towards the end of that same month of July, 1872.

"An astonishin' lot of tip-top swells and their smart-lookin' lady friends," a ticket-collector at Paddington Station remarked to an inquisitive newspaper reporter on a certain afternoon of that memorable Summer, "went off to Windsor by the two o'clock train. Something must be up!"

Something was indeed "up;" for that afternoon was to witness a match between the representatives of the 9th,



Queen's Royal Lancers and a team found from the Officers of His Majesty's Royal Horse Guards. And what is more, Royalty itself was there to lend lustre to the occasion, in the persons of the Prince and Princess of Wales, the Duke and Duchess of Teck, and the veteran Commander-in-Chief of the British Army, the patriarchal Duke of Cambridge, "together," as a contemporary chronicler informs us, "with a contingent from the fashionable clubs."

To do honour to the occasion, and possibly with an eye to keeping order amongst that "considerable body of the general public" which had been "attracted to the scene by the promised novelty," "the ground was kept by a Squadron of the Household Cavalry, whose glittering cuirasses and helmets contributed quite a military character to the spectacle." Doubtless: but it is odds-on betting that, despite the sumptuousness of the "Tin-bellies" full dress panoply the eyes of the onlookers were more bedazzled by the turn-out of the contesting teams.

"The Horse Guards," our faithful chronicler informs us, "appeared on the field in natty red silk shirts, blue body belts, undress forage caps,<sup>1</sup> knee breeches and black boots; while the Lancers affected white shirts, red caps, red cravats, red and gold belts, and drab-clothed boots." A magnificent *ensemble*; and how particularly snappy the "red cravats" must have looked, especially towards the end of the game!

For it was a hard fought contest, by all accounts, with the eight-a-side going all out until the final drop of the hat; and the result being a draw, a return match was arranged to be played off on Woolwich Common. This return event took place within a few weeks; again under distinguished patronage, since the occasion was graced by the presence of Prince Arthur of Connaught, the Prince Imperial, "the *élite* of the garrison," and—*mirabile dictu!* by the Chinese Ambassador; though what Celestial thoughts were entertained about proceedings by the last-named does not, unfortunately, emerge!

Possibly with the idea of demoralising the opponents from the outset by the effulgence of their sartorial appointments, the Lancers took the field chastely arrayed in "red and blue shirts and mob caps."<sup>2</sup> This effect was

<sup>1</sup>Of the "pill-box" variety, as favoured nowadays by bell-boys and the like.

<sup>2</sup>Not unlike an elaborate version of a modern boudoir cap,—without the lace trimmings.



Polo in India before the Emperor Akbar, sixteenth century.



Persian Ladies at Polo. (Note bandages on ponies' legs.)

rather nullified by the unexpected appearance of the Horse Guards valiants in "yellow jerseys and caps with the most fascinating little tassels, not unlike those worn by elderly gentlemen on their smoking caps." At all events, their effect upon the astounded Lancers was such that the representatives of the Household Cavalry were victorious by a comfortable margin.

The game had been fast and, at some moments, as it would seem, not far removed from furious. "The most Noble Marquess of Worcester," our chronicler informs us, "was, in the excitement of the fray, dealt a 'wipe' on the head that was nearly responsible for spilling aristocratic blood; and there was much dashing to and fro, many collisions, and a brandishing of hockey sticks<sup>3</sup> in the air." The ladies, however, one is glad to learn, "preserved their customary sang froid; a tribute to British phlegm." Equally, a tribute to British thickheadedness, and a demonstration that its possession was not entirely a monopoly of the lower orders of the community, is witnessed by the fact that, despite the "wipe" aforementioned, so far as his Lordship of Worcester was concerned "no real damage was done." (Whether the stick which struck the blow suffered any injury does not transpire!)

The fact that the initial custom of playing on without respite, until both steeds and riders staggered into stillness out of sheer exhaustion, had yielded by this time to the practise of playing off a series of short *chukkas*, is made evident by the following extract; "At frequent intervals throughout the game there was an armistice, with cup-bearers offering cooling beverages to the participants, and the ponies having their mouths washed out with cunning concoctions poured from long-necked bottles by attendant grooms." In which circumstances, one may again presume that "a good time was enjoyed by all!"

The new sport had obviously caught on; but there were not wanting those amongst the more moribund of the quidnuncs encumbering the stuffier Service clubs to look more than a little askance at the whole business. *They* had never played the (adjectival) game, and they would be

<sup>3</sup>Actually, the newly-designed sticks were in use; but it is hardly to be expected of our chronicler that, in the excitement, he should be able quite accurately to differentiate.

everlastingly-condemned if they could see any (adjectival) reason why anybody else should want to! Fortunately, however, as has been related, the Commander-in-Chief had witnessed "the (adjectival) game" in progress for himself; and although in many ways a highly-conservative, not to say reactionary, old martinet, seemed more alive to the advantages of that encouragement to good horse-mastership the sport embodied than the bulk of his contemporaries. At all events, after mature consideration, the august fiat went forth that, so long as Government chargers were not employed in its exercise, the playing of polo could be continued with all the advantage of official approbation.

From such small beginnings, and the flood of inter-regimental contests which followed them, polo became,

as it were, firmly seated in the saddle. Every year saw its popularity rapidly increasing, its practice more widespread. America caught the infection; in India it soon became second only in importance to the Cavalryman's more specifically military evolutions; while in England, Hurlingham and Ranelagh arose to testify to the fascination exercised by the sport over those with the leisure and the means successfully to pursue it.

With the annual contest for the Westchester Cup, for which America has put such a galaxy of fine players in the field at one time and another, and in the contests for which she has so often proved deservedly the victor, polo has indeed become international, another bond of union between the sportsman and the horse-lover the wide world over.



## Return of the Horse to Favor in the German Army

"The striking lessons learned by the German Army from the Spanish battlefield cropped out in the military parade in honor of Chancellor Hitler's birthday yesterday," says the Berlin correspondent of the *Evening Standard*, in the April 21st issue of that paper. "According to military observers, and those acquainted with German Army displays since 1935, the fact stood out that the horse has won back his front rank place in the military sphere.

"Contrary to last year's parade when there was no cavalry in evidence, this year there were not only plenty of

riders, but the motorized field artillery has been divided up into horse-drawn four- and six-inch batteries, while the machine gun section has also reverted to horses, with twin and single machine gun caissons being animal drawn. This transition is attributed by military observers to be the direct result of German experience on Spanish battle fields where supermotorized outfits were frequently handicapped by mechanical breakdowns. The German Army is thus partially demechanizing its artillery as rapidly as possible."



# Good Form in Hunting Appointments

By W. M. GRIMES, LIEUTENANT COLONEL, 2d Cavalry

## GENERAL

Probably everyone who exhibits hunters in classes where appointments count, has been in doubt as to the correct turnout for such classes. If the exhibitor has been in a quandary the judge perhaps has been more so. There probably is no phase of showing judging about which so little is known.

The preparations both on the part of exhibitor and judge really amount to an old fashioned show-down inspection, army style.

In the army we turn out properly garbed and equipped as prescribed for the particular occasion; in a similar manner we should adhere to the usually accepted customs and standards of the hunting field and show ring.

Since considerable stress and emphasis is placed on appointments it behooves the exhibitor to turn out properly and the judge to know what is correct.

In this article I will point out a few facts which I hope will aid the bewildered exhibitor and the confused judge. First let us consider the saddle and its hunting appurtenances.

Let me state at the outset that far more attention is devoted to the details of tack for the show hunter than for the working hunter; more gadgets trim the show saddle than the working saddle. A hunting biscuit and a swig of sherry frequently may win a show ribbon but they seldom put a fox to earth. If it is a decision between wire cutters, a flask or sandwich case, the experienced hunter elects wire cutters, the show ring hunter flasks and sandwich cases.

In the text that follows are descriptions and photographs of saddles illustrating the usually called-for hunting appointments, as well as the usually accepted method of carrying them. Many hunting people frown on carrying all of the various gadgets, and rightly so, on the grounds that it is a question of individual preference what one carries in the hunting field. I think everyone will agree 100% on that point. However, for the show ring there must be some yard stick for judging purposes.

**Flask:** A glass hunting flask, with leather case; a man's flask case is carried on near side front, a lady's flask is usually in the combination flask and sandwich case carried on off side rear. Custom decrees that sherry is the beverage par excellence.

**Sandwich Case:** There are two types, a combination flask and sandwich case the usual type for a lady, this attached to the off side rear; the man's sandwich kit ordinarily is complete in itself without the flask, and is attached also to the off side rear. This is not an inflexible rule. Men may use the combination case.

**Horn:** There are two types used in American hunts; one the straight metal horn, 9 to 12 inches long, generally made of copper, German silver or solid silver throughout,

or combination of these metals; the other is the old type cow horn with its deep sonorous tone. The small horn is carried by many Masters and huntsmen tucked in their coat; if a case is used it is attached to the off side fore. The cow horn is suspended from a strap or thong over the left shoulder, slung so as to be easily accessible.

**Wire Cutters:** A very useful gadget in most countries. Carried in leather case, there is no fixed place to carry same, however if attached to near (left) front it is very easy and handy to get at when dismounted. When wire cutters are wanted they are wanted in a hurry!

**Hound Couples:** Usually some member of the staff carries hound couples, attached to near side rear.

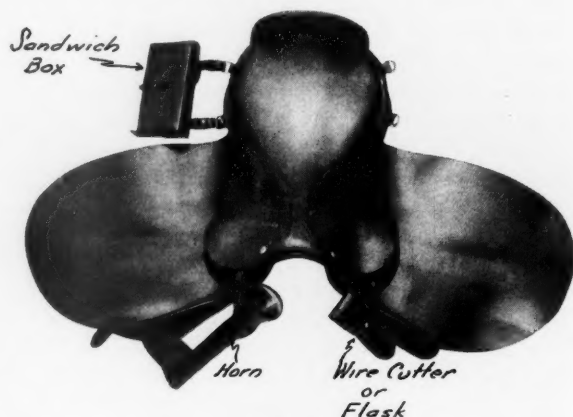


PLATE I  
THE MASTER

NOTE: The plate illustrates a Master's saddle with horn case attached. The case may or may not be carried, depending on whether the Master carries his horn tucked in his coat, and the type of horn used (cow horn or small copper horn). The plate shows wire cutters—this may be replaced by a flask, largely a matter of individual preference.

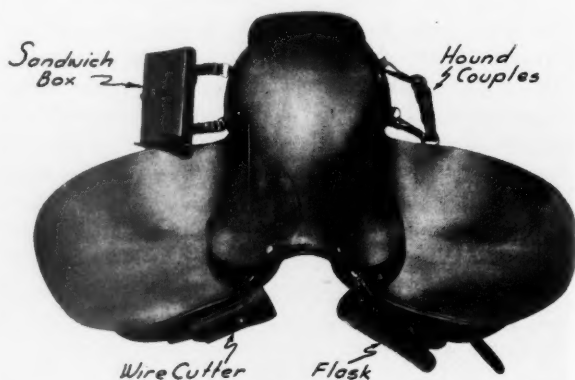


PLATE II  
THE HONORARY WHIPPER-IN

1. There are two types of whipper-in, the professional and honorary.
2. Professional whippers-in do not carry flasks and sandwich

cases, they do carry spare hound couples and wire cutters.

3. Honorary whippers-in, as a rule do not carry spare hound couples and wire cutters; they may carry flasks and sandwich cases.

4. In Army hunts the staff is composed of honorary whippers-in who in general perform the tasks of professional whippers-in; therefor it is customary to combine the equipment of both the professional and honorary whipper-in.

5. Professional whippers-in carry spare stirrup leathers under the left arm over right shoulder buckle opposite right breast, point of strap heading down and stuck in coat. For honorary whippers-in the carrying of spare stirrup leather is usually optional, but, if carried, may be worn under the coat, but here again if the hunt staff turns out with honorary whippers-in who perform the tasks of the professional whippers-in the spare stirrup leather should be worn *over* the coat as prescribed above.

6. In the plate note the wire cutter is on off front and the flask is on near fore; it is very useful to have wire cutters on near side front so as to be readily available when one dismounts.

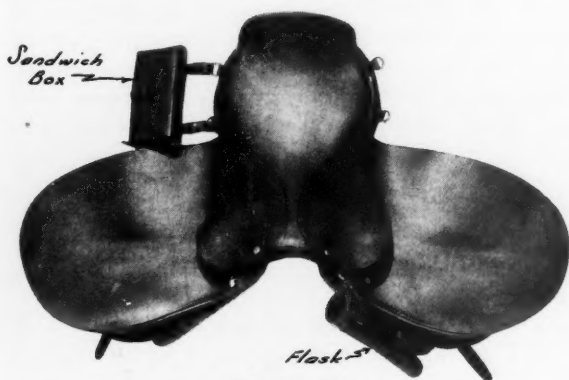


PLATE III  
THE MEMBER

1. Usually a member turns out with the flask and sandwich case as indicated. Wire cutters may be carried.

#### CLOTHING

A word as to the turnout of Army personnel for appointment classes. As a rule the field in Army hunts wear either rat-catcher or the uniform; few wear scarlet; usually those who do are members or ex-members of Army hunt staffs. The uniform of the United States Army is welcomed and accepted in all civilian fox-hunting communities. On gala occasions, when those having scarlet are invited to wear it, the Army's O.D. is considered its equivalent.

It is customary and appropriate for officers when showing in classes where appointments count, to turn out in O.D. and carry the usual equipment carried by a member, master or honorary whipper-in, depending in what capacity one is showing; obviously if the individual is a member of a hunt staff he may wear scarlet.

#### SADDLERY

A word of caution as to certain items of saddle equipment that are perfectly appropriate in Army circles but not so considered in fox hunting communities. In all appointment classes, and for that matter when hunting with civilian packs, the following should not be worn: bridles overly brassed, colored brow bands, white halter-tie ropes,

numnahs, saddle pads or cloths or colored girths of any description.

The hunting man prefers plain workmanlike leather tack without frills—we formerly had the same idea in the Army, unfortunately now our plain, handsome saddlery has gone modern! Color and folderol are the order of the day!

Simplicity is the handmaiden of smartness. Nice saddlery, soft, clean and pliable, with brass polished and bits burnished, has an air of distinction.

#### JUDGING

Let's assume you are judging an appointment class and are thoroughly familiar with all local conditions governing appointments. First ascertain from the exhibitor what he or she is representing; this is essential, otherwise you do not know what to look for in the way of appointments. Knowing what the exhibitor represents, stand well off from the horse and rider and seek a bird's-eye view of both, note the horse, bridle, saddle and saddle appointments—compare with other exhibitors. Then step up close to each exhibitor and make a minute and detailed examination along the following lines:

*Horse:* In good condition as indicated by weight, coat and general cleanness. Properly groomed, proper shod, feet clean. If without mane, neck properly hogged. If mane is present, a nicely braided mane coupled with a laced tail sets off any horse. Compare horses for conformation.

*Bridle:* Either single or double with cavesson nose band. All keepers properly fastened; leather clean, soft, pliable, metal parts polished.

*Bits:* There is no question that the neatest bridle is one where bits are sewn in, however in the army the sewing of bits to bridles is exceptional. Since custom decrees the sewn-in bit, a bridle so equipped should score higher than one not sewn. Bits properly adjusted, placed in mouth correctly; curb chain in chin groove and adjusted. Lip strap properly adjusted. Bits and curb chain clean, and bright, no rust.

*Breast Plate:* Optional. Properly adjusted.

*Martingale:* Optional. Type optional properly adjusted.

*Saddle:* Flat hunting type with plain flaps or knee roll. In the Army many ride an Italian or Polish type jumping saddle; these are highly satisfactory; no numnahs or saddle pads or cloths.

*Stirrup Irons:* Large, workmanlike, and clean—no rust.

*Girth:* Either leather or web with two or three buckles. Leather girth is preferable. In Virginia many judges require a leather guard worn between the top of the buckles on the girth and the skirt of the saddle.

*Saddle Attachments:* Wire cutters, flask, sandwich case, horn, hound couples, etc.

*Gloves:* Wear plain leather glove, with woolen knit rain gloves tucked under girth with fingers to the front. In practice probably more comfortable to place one glove under near and off girth, although both may be together; however, the near side is more practical and accessible.

In hunt team classes the tack should be as near alike as

possible, viz: bridles, double or single, with sewn in reins and head stalls; saddles, all preferably the same type, either all with or without martingales; same for breast plates.

Next examine in detail such items as horn. Flask should contain sherry; sandwich case should contain sandwich or hunting biscuit; hound couples should be clean; wire cutters free from rust, easy to manipulate.

The hunt staff, those carrying horn should be able to blow same; whippers-in should be called upon to demonstrate their ability to use the whip.

Horses in hunt team classes should, as far as practicable, be alike in shape, style, type, color; if an odd colored horse is present place in middle of team. Manes, tails and clipplings alike.

It is advisable to keep a simple accurate check and score of each exhibitor. Unless this is done in going over a large class of appointments one is very apt to overlook a particularly good or bad "turnout." When it is considered that appointments as a rule count high it is due both the management and the exhibitor that the judging be done accurately and quickly.

A word of caution to judges, remember Corinthian and hunt team classes are colorful spectacles and the pageantry of hunting should not be overlooked; the gallery likes to see a well turned out hunter. When the exhibitors line up, line them so the spectators may also get an eye full. The next point, nothing detracts so much from a class as to see a group of judges aimlessly walking about the ring, apparently not sure what they are looking for or scoring. Prior to judging appointments get together with your associates and decide on a procedure. Remember every exhibitor in the class, no matter what his or her performance, must be judged for appointments; perhaps the exhibitor has gone to considerable effort and expense to be turned out properly. Obviously your top horses should be grouped to one side and these gone over very thoroughly. Finally a word of caution, be sure that appointments have received the value (percentage) allotted to the class. In other words, if performance counts 50%, appointments 25%, and conformation 25%, be certain that you and your associates have gotten the top performers since that alone counts half, and then give the remaining half—appointments and conformation—the percentage indicated. The point I want to make is this, irrespective of what you may think of "appointments" and its relative value compared to a nice performance and nice conformation, the commit-

tee had a definite object in view when it wrote the conditions of the class. The committee, the exhibitor and the spectator have the right to demand that the ribbons be awarded under the conditions specified.

The following classes are usually listed as appointment classes: Corinthian and hunt team classes.

The Corinthian usually calls for a qualified hunter to be ridden by an amateur, who is a member of a recognized hunt.

In my opinion the true Army Corinthian is he who rides and shows his private mount—the term Corinthian means amateur; private mounts are amateurs, public, government owned mounts are not.

Recently the Masters of Foxhounds Association of America drew up a resolution reading as follows: "The Secretary x x x is directed to request all Masters of recognized and registered hunts to notify all members of or subscribers to their Hunts to refrain from turning out any rider in a hunt team or hunt livery class in which they might be an exhibitor in the livery of their Hunt, unless such rider is actually a member of or subscriber to or of the Hunt Staff of the Hunt which he is representing."

A Hunt Team is composed of three hunters, shown by any combination of the following: Master, gentleman or lady members of a hunt, huntsman, whippers-in (either honorary or professional) usually in one of the following combinations:

1. Master or Huntsman and two whippers-in.
2. Three members of a hunt.

"A Hunt Team to score the highest possible number of points on appointments should be turned out in a workmanlike way with livery, boots, spurs, etc. alike as to cut, color and make. New leather, cloth or velvet is not necessary, as blue-black hunting caps, wine-colored hunting coats, dark well-worn saddles and bridles, etc., if clean, show the workman. The Master, Acting-Master, or Huntsman should be able to blow horn or whistle carried. Horses should be whip broken." Extract from Prize List, National Horse Show Association of America, 1937.

The following table of articles pertains more especially to those turning out in scarlet. However, insofar as officers riding in uniform they, of course, should be in the prescribed uniform with gloves, boots, etc., as per uniform regulations. In Appointment Classes officers should carry such items as hunting crops, woolen knit rain gloves and the customary hunting appurtenances such as wire cutters, sandwich cases, etc.



<i>Article</i>	<i>Worn By</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Silk hunting hat with guard. Black velvet hunting cap.	Gentleman member. Master—Whipper-in. (amateur—professional).	Likewise worn by an ex-M.F.H. when invited to do so. Note: In some communities it is very desirable to have a hat guard—use plain black with scarlet coat.
Hunting Coat of Material, color, cut, collar, buttons and trimmings of the hunt represented.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur—professional).	
White or brown hunting breeches, of leather or heavy twill or cord.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur—professional).	Brown hunting breeches due to serviceable color, are becoming increasingly popular. Tabs sewed on. Not sewed to top.
Boots, black with brown or colored tops (washed or polished, optional).	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur or professional).	
Spurs, straight hunting, no rowels.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur or professional).	
Garters, white or brown.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur or professional).	White or brown to match breeches. Should be made of leather. White boot garters are obviously difficult to keep clean.
Gloves, heavy wash leather or brown leather gloves.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur or professional).	
Gloves—woolen rain-knit.	Gentleman member, Master, Whipper-in (amateur or professional).	White or canary yellow, worn on either side under girth—for convenience in getting at them the near side appears more appropriate; on the other hand some prefer to put a glove on each side.
Hunting Crop.	Carried by all.	Plain hunting crop—handle of bone roughened; main body of crop, Malacca or whale bone covered either with cat gut or leather—maybe half and half. Leather keeper at end of stock, same material as thong. Thong of plain leather. Leash at end of thong of various colors, red, blue, green, etc.

### Riding Facilities Cleveland Area

Air line distance from stadium		Miles of riding trail	No. of stables	Livery Horses	Boarders
18 miles	North Chagrin Res.	11.4	12	129	42
7 "	Shaker Heights, O.		2	52	128
19 "	South Chagrin Res.	3.5	none		
12 "	Bedford, O. Res.	12.5	1	14	
14 "	Brecksville, O. Res.	13	2	24	18
22 "	Hinckley, O. Res.	3	none		
6½ "	Big Creek Res.	8	5	32	33
8 "	Rocky River Res.	11	12	141	82
		63.4	34	392	303



### Major General Leon B. Kromer

On March 25, 1938, Major General Leon B. Kromer relinquished the duties and responsibilities of the office of Chief of Cavalry. The period 1934-1938 stands out in the annals of Cavalry as one of great progress. General Kromer has unwaveringly guided new development along sound cavalry lines. He never for an instant overlooked the principal cavalry rôle—the employment of large cavalry units on combat missions. In the field of organization he has submitted and urged repeatedly early approval of modern cavalry divisional organization, both horse and mechanized. The consummation of these important projects will form one of the major tasks of his successor. Development of improved equipment has made great strides under his guidance. From an endless variety of recommendations for new devices, implements, and gadgets, he has insisted upon sifting the grain from the chaff and secured for Cavalry every new or improved item of equipment which promised to increase both the mobility and fighting power of our Arm. He insisted upon simplicity and flexibility with a reduction of the load on man and animal, ruthlessly eliminating those special items for special purposes that soon reduce mobility.

Ever a horseman, General Kromer recognized from the start that the "iron horse" has opened to Cavalry a greater sphere, and that Cavalry must unhesitatingly seize and exploit, to the fullest extent consistent with its development, an implement that bids fair to greatly enhance the powers of the Arm. He has steadfastly held to the conception that mechanized cavalry is Cavalry. Created to perform cavalry missions, its development is the concern of every cavalryman. In spite of the urgent demands upon his time made by mechanization, he did not neglect horse cavalry or horses as the condition of the Cavalry School and the units in the field so well attests.

That Cavalry may take its proper place from the very beginning of any future emergency, General Kromer urged its inclusion at appropriate strength in the Initial Protective Force and its proper expansion in subsequent phases of mobilization to take full advantage of the peacetime personnel and facilities provided for Cavalry of the Regular Army, National Guard, and Organized Reserves. These plans have not been fully completed and a number of related projects are under study, but he set forth a clear cut objective and made specific recommendations for the activation and equipment of the necessary units of the Regular Cavalry. In this connection he used his influence to assist the National Guard Bureau and the Organized Reserves.

The Cavalry School, under the supervision of our retiring Chief, has kept pace with Cavalry development. One of General Kromer's last acts was to initiate a new course to give additional training to selected officers in automotive and communications subjects so that the regular course would not be unduly restricted in time necessary to cover basic cavalry instruction.

Above all General Kromer appreciated the necessity of learning the condition and needs of cavalry units first hand by personal visits. He availed himself of every opportunity to attend maneuvers annually and to make informal visits and accompany troops in the field. Astride a horse and around the campfire he felt the pulse of the rank and file of Cavalry. When he returned to the office he breathed renewed vitality into the dry pages of army correspondence. He made Cavalry live in the halls of the War Department. A perpetual monument to him is "Cavalry Combat." He stimulated its conception and execution.

We have a better Cavalry because of General Kromer. What has been accomplished during his tour may well give him profound satisfaction. The even greater things that he projected only to find his tour too short to consummate must remain an objective for his successors and all cavalymen. May we carry them out with the true spirit of Cavalry—as General Kromer would have done.

And to you, General Kromer—long life and good galloping!

### The Saturday Evening Post

In the *Saturday Evening Post* of March 12, 1938 there appeared an article by Thomas R. Phillips, C.A.C., entitled "Preview of Armageddon." The author devoted some space to comments on cavalry.

Commentators have frequently expressed their admiration of the uncanny sense of timing which that publication has displayed in its news articles. Made up several weeks in advance, it has repeatedly published articles on men, things and events, to which attention was being focused on the very day the weekly appeared on the news-stands. The editors have publicly admitted their luck in this connection, and if memory is not at fault have "knocked on wood" so to speak in mentioning that sooner or later their luck would run out.

It has.

On the very day of publication of this article which bade a somewhat fainthearted farewell to horse cavalry,

Spanish horsemen were sweeping triumphantly down the valley of the Ebro.

Indignant protests of this article have flooded the editor's mail. Attention is invited to "General Hawkins' Notes" and "Letters to the Editor." Also, read "SPECIALIZATION," its theme is significant.

### A Prediction

With the continuance of maneuvers involving combined arms under realistic conditions many thoughtful military leaders will arrive at this conclusion: Mechanized elements employed in close coordination with horse cavalry will constitute a vitally potential offensive threat—surprise, speed, mass.

It has been shown repeatedly that fast tanks outdistance supported infantry. Even medium and heavy tanks must have sufficient mobility to overcome the vulnerability of a slow moving target. Artillery concentrations cannot be expected to neutralize effectively antitank weapons which cannot be located; and antitank positions are not disclosed until their targets appear. In the future as in the last war, the final antitank weapon will be neutralized by individual warriors. Isolated and undamaged antitank guns will play havoc with mechanized vehicles until put out of action. On the contrary, within the prescribed zone, personnel weapons should suffer severely from mechanized action. Again, mechanized elements closely and effectively coordinated with units of high battlefield mobility will have great potential power.

It has been reported previously that during the maneuvers of the 8th Brigade at Fort Benning in the Spring of 1937 a fast tank unit was attached to the 6th Cavalry for

an attack mission. The tanks led the attack closely followed by the cavalry. The objective was taken with speed and dispatch. As one tank commander stepped from his vehicle he remarked, "In ten or twelve years with tanks, this is the first time that I have seen the cooperating elements over-run the position on the heels of the tanks. Ordinarily, after the tanks over-run the position much time expires before the supported troops are able to take over and organize it."

The *Military and Naval Digest*, December, 1937, carries this statement: "The cavalry forces of the Soviet Army are also unsurpassed by any other country. They have been estimated at around twenty divisions, or some 100,000 men on horseback, who would support a tank charge on a big scale, employing the old style tactics of the Cossacks of the Imperial army."

### Cheers

The Army as well as the American people is grateful for the recovery of John J. Pershing, The General of the Armies. May we be assured of his wise and able counsel for many years to come. Like all significant events in the life of a republic, it will be another score of years before our people properly evaluate the services rendered to the nation by this indomitable leader.

### See Any Horses, Mister?

*Again, cavalry is difficult to conceal and offers an easy target to aviation. (Page 100, Saturday Evening Post, March 12, 1938.)*

The CAVALRY JOURNAL has no photographs handy



La Venta, Panama

A—Can you find the 400 animals and 600 soldiers of the 2d F.A. (Pack) in their bivouac area within the enclosed black line marked "A"? C—Santa-Clara Inn.



with which to emphasize its belief that horse cavalry is comparatively easy to conceal from the air, so it borrows this one from the Field Artillery Journal, an illustration of a forthcoming article in that magazine about the First Battalion, Second Field Artillery, in bivouac on the Panamanian coast, January 19, 1938. There are 600 men, 400 horses and mules within the area marked "A." The

point marked "C" is a small hotel. Lt. Col. G. H. Franke's pack artillery battalion wasn't making any particular effort at concealment. It just moved into the shade and sat down. The comparative size of the small building used as a hotel indicates the low altitude from which the photo was taken. A picture, says the proverb, is worth a thousand words.



## President, United States Cavalry Association

On March 25, 1938, the following letter was received by the Executive Council, United States Cavalry Association:

I hereby tender my resignation as President of the United States Cavalry Association, effective immediately, because of the expiration of my tour of duty as Chief of Cavalry.

I recommend that my successor, Major General John K. Herr, Chief of Cavalry, United States Army,

be elected President of the United States Cavalry Association by the Council.

LEON B. KROMER,  
Major General, U. S. Army.

In accordance with this letter the Executive Council, on March 26th, unanimously elected Major General John K. Herr, Chief of Cavalry, to the office of President of the Cavalry Association.



## Welcome to the Cavalry

Class USMA, 1938

A warm welcome awaits you young gentlemen of the Class of 1938, USMA, when you join the cavalry commands to which you may be assigned. It will be realized that along the lines of military courtesy, sense of duty, personal appearance and similar virtues you are well prepared. However, as cavalry officers you are there to learn and to become prepared to take your place as an important link in the organization of a troop of cavalry.

You join a branch of the service rich in tradition. From the days of the lance the profession of arms has gone far, particularly for cavalrymen. You are entering a branch of the service which is vitally concerned with all of the new weapons and the means of waging warfare which modern science and industry have afforded. All of the varied activities with which you must, eventually, be familiar will require years of strict attention to duty and enthusiastic performance.

Men who preceded you by ten or more years will take you under their wing. May it be your good fortune to report to a troop commander who will make it his

prime concern to see that your military education is facilitated in every possible manner. However high may be his interest, it is your personal application which will indicate your future usefulness as a part of the army team.

Someone has said that a military reputation is established within the first ten years of an officer's service. Webster defines reputation as the opinion of others towards an individual. See that your personal trade-mark is placed on every task assigned you. Remember, that, during your active career, there are no practice days; for you, every day is run for record.

May you so spend the succeeding ten years that when a new second lieutenant reports to you as troop commander he may feel that the vicissitudes of fortune have treated him kindly. May you early recognize that one of the most satisfactory experiences of human life is to deserve the respect and devotion of those whose lot it may be to follow you. May you early feel that there is no more self-satisfying activity in life than the successful leadership of reliant, resourceful and loyal Americans.

# The United States Cavalry Association

*Organized November 9, 1885*

## DESIGN

*1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.—ARTICLE III OF THE CONSTITUTION.*

## OFFICERS

### *President*

MAJOR GENERAL JOHN K. HERR

### *Vice-President*

BRIGADIER GENERAL HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, Retired.

### *Secretary and Treasurer*

MAJOR CHARLES S. KILBURN, Cavalry

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

BRIGADIER GENERAL NATHANIEL H. EGLESTON, 51st Cavalry Brigade.

BRIGADIER GENERAL L. S. DAVIDSON, 56th Cavalry Brigade.

COLONEL GUY KENT, Cavalry.

COLONEL W. W. GORDON, Cavalry.

COLONEL JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3rd Cavalry.

COLONEL ADNA R. CHAFFEE, (Cavalry) General Staff.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL WILLIAM NALLE, (Cavalry) General Staff.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL HENRY D. WHITFIELD, Cavalry-Reserve.

MAJOR HENRY P. AMES, 1317th Service Unit.

## MEMBERSHIP

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and noncommissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, N.W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

## DUES AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$3.00, which includes subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rate of \$3.00 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 50 cents additional.

*Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address. Changes in address are made only on notification.*

---

## Letters To The Editor

---

### Cavalry's Forgotten Man

Dear Sir:

If we are to gain anything from all the education, passed out so cheerfully by the ramifications of Army policy and indulged in most gleefully by students as so detailed, then certainly that "anything" must be balance.

Yet do we gain that . . . or anything approximating same?

Admittedly, the Sergeant Bugler has no defense before the court although he can "blow" us down the road—albeit not far.

The Sergeant Horseshoer, however, does not even exist—yet he delivers the "main blow" beyond all question.

Woe unto our troublous times!

An excerpt from a recent publication follows:

*"Bugler Sergeant"*

Sounds the regimental calls.

Trains the troop buglers and commands the field music.

On the march, rides with the Commander's Group and acts as horseholder for the regimental commander. (One wonders if he be assisted in this strenuous duty by the squadron buglers when they are not with their respective squadrons!)

*"Squadron Buglers"*

Accompany and perform the duties prescribed by their respective squadron commanders.

The corporals assist the Sergeant Bugler when not with their squadrons.

The thought occurs that possibly a basic private could hold the horse of the regimental commander. Moreover, the Band Leader or the noncommissioned officers of the Band could instruct the troop buglers. Again, some one other than the Corporal Bugler might do as the squadron commander directed.

—but the horseshoer!

Herewith another excerpt from a recent text:

*"Horseshoers."*

Under the direction of the Stable Sergeant they shoe and care for the feet of animals. (All of which sounds innocent enough—"duck soup," as it were!)

Working in pairs, they pack and unpack the picket line horses.

They are responsible that the loads on these horses are properly balanced and ride evenly.

On the march, three horseshoers ride with the horse group. Two drive picket line pack horses while the third replace shoes lost on the march. (During hourly halts, and then the mad scramble to catch up with the column only to repeat the process again!) The fourth horseshoer rides with the wagon group when the combat vehicle is animal drawn, and replaces shoes lost by the draft horses.

When the vehicle is a trailer, this horseshoer drives one pack horse and rides with the horse group.

Naturally, this is an understatement.

For many obvious reasons, competent horseshoers are scarce. As such, they do not come "ready made" from civil life and hence must be trained after joining the Service. The duty requires men of excellent physique, considerable technical knowledge, competent mechanically, who willingly remain on the job and are capable of performing wearying and difficult duties with but little possibility of supervision.

"Perfect soldiers" to say the least!

Of rewards, there are none . . . not in times of peace, at any rate. Usually a private first class and possibly a specialist fourth class, the horseshoer receives more than his share of well aimed kicks from ungrateful equines. Frankly, that is all. . . .

To be a good horseshoer requires all the qualities of an excellent noncommissioned officer. Yet as he demonstrates such qualities, he is promoted and leaves the shoeing shop. The vicious cycle again begins as a new man is selected, trained and given the responsibility. The shoeing suffers. Be it remembered that even the source of such good material for potential horseshoers is ever lessening as industry, agriculture and business, to say nothing of the professions, select and utilize such excellent material, offering far more attractive rewards.

An adequate answer to the given problem is the creation of a Sergeant Horseshoer and two Corporal Horseshoers. They would remain in the shops, shoeing the more difficult and complicated cases. Certainly, and above all, they would actively supervise and instruct. Excellence, after all, must be rewarded in the military game.

To break from Morpheus' embrace, we should be modern enough to skip the windjammer's traditional appeal, rely primarily upon the reveille gun which reputedly will still shoot, the Top Kick's raucous whistle and even an antiquated alarm clock unboosted by electrical power!

The rude awakening thus effected, even at the expense of parasitical buglers, should enable us to remember cavalry's most forgotten man—"The Horseshoer!"

EDWIN M. BURNETT,

H. JORDAN THEIS,

Captains, 6th Cavalry.

---

### A Method of Using the Light Machine Gun

Dear Sir:

In 1936 the Light Machine Gun Platoons of each Regiment of Cavalry, of the 1st Cavalry Division, were organized into two Light Machine Gun Troops. These two Troops together with the Heavy Machine Gun Troop



constituted the Provisional Machine Gun Squadron. The 12th Cavalry is located in the extreme southern portion of Texas. This country is very flat and covered with grass and high bushes. Often so high that an observer behind the gun could not observe the target and target could only be observed from one or two points for all Light Machine Guns. The height of the Light Machine Gun is about ten inches from the ground.

It was often impossible for the Provisional Machine Gun Squadron of the 12th Cavalry to use the Light Machine Gun for direct fire because the gunners could not see the targets. In order to overcome this I used the following method:

#### To Locate Targets Quickly—

Each noncommissioned officer and each gunner of the Light Machine Gun Troops was equipped with a B.C. ruler three hundred mils in length with a string twenty inches long attached. (These are very easy to make.) With a little practice distances in mils could be measured very accurately. However the mil scale in the field glasses could have been used but this scale only covers sixty mils. Each N.C.O. and each gunner was also equipped with a "Machine Gunners Handbook" or a ballistic table issued by the Ordnance in pamphlet form.

#### Target Designation—

In designating targets a reference object was used. The target was designated so many mils to the right or left of the reference object extending so many mils to the right or left. If the distance between the reference object and the target exceeded the mils on the traversing bar the traversing dial was used.

The Officer or N.C.O. giving the orders always pointed toward the target before commencing his orders. This was done so the tripod of the gun would be dropped with the front leg of the tripod always pointing towards the target. This insured the best support by the rear legs of the tripod to the gun when firing, and, also gave the maximum use of the traversing scale on the traversing bar.

It was necessary to use a Q.E. This was obtained from the ballistic tables. In using the Q.E. it was necessary to level the gun. The prismatic compasses in the sketching cases of the Rifle Troops and the extra clinometers (M.G. M1917) in the Heavy Machine Gun Troop were issued to the Light Machine Gun Troops. When the gun was leveled by the bubble in the prismatic compass, the gun was then elevated by the elevating mechanism, one click equalling one mil of the Q.E. (It is surprising how near the gun can be leveled by the eye with practice.) The clinometers were used in the normal manner.

With a little practice, orders could be given very rapidly and the gunners could get on the target in a very short time.

Similar conditions of country will often be met in the future. It seems that it would increase the efficiency of this weapon if clinometers were issued to the Light Machine Gun Platoons.

HEYWOOD S. DODD,  
Major, 12th Cavalry.

EDITOR'S NOTE: Basic Field Manual, Volume III, Part Seven, Light Machine Gun Marksmanship, Ground Course, 1937, gives, in paragraph 58, a simple method of firing the light machine gun by indirect laying. This method requires the use of only those instruments normally issued to light machine gun platoons. Both methods possess sound merit.

#### Appreciation

West Point, N. Y.,

March 13, 1938.

Major General Leon Kromer,  
President, U. S. Cavalry Association.

My dear General Kromer:

The latest binding of the CAVALRY JOURNAL for the First Class Club arrived last week and my classmates and I wish to express our appreciation for your educational and interesting gift. Looking over the reading tables of the club I find that the Cavalry is well sponsored. The several volumes of the CAVALRY JOURNAL already received have a well-thumbed appearance already and I'm sure that the new volume will be happily received.

Sincerely yours,

EDWIN N. HOWELL.

#### Preview of Armageddon

Fragments from letters:

"In 1933, at Fort McClellan, Alabama, in a two-sided maneuver, 4 cavalry scouts operating independently through brush and timber on the hilly reservation, with aggressive and positive advance, caused the aviation to report that at least 'a squadron' of cavalry was advancing.

"In 1936, at Allegan, I am under the impression that aviation never did find the bivouac of the 1st Squadron, 14th Cavalry, at Dunningville; although the map and aerial photographs indicated the woods in which to look for them.—On the same maneuver, our liaison planes could not locate us for a couple of hours until after much 'wild-goose chasing' and great use of the radio, so well were we hidden in a position of readiness the first morning.

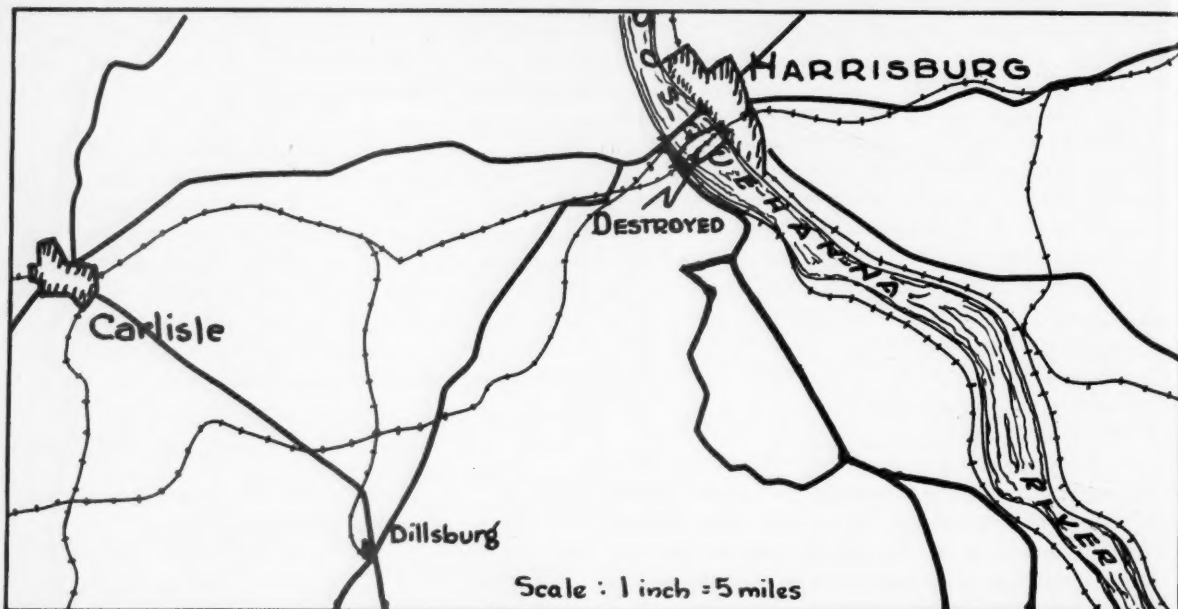
"Hostile planes never would have found us on the last day of the maneuvers, if the men had not gotten out on the road an hour or so too soon thinking the maneuver was over."

"I wonder if Major Phillips has read *Cavalry Combat*? A year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL might be of value to him!"

"Incidentally, since the article was written plenty of changes must have been made in Franco's set-up. He must have gotten himself a band of horse cavalry from some place because by the papers he seems to be going places now with the horse cavalry leading the show. Do you suppose he finally got wise to what the cavalry could do for him? Looks like it, doesn't it?"



## What Would You Do?



EDITOR'S NOTE: It is with extreme pleasure that we announce the fact that Lieutenant Slinkovitch has been granted a leave of absence with permission to visit foreign shores. The following article from the pen of Captain Graham Breed, a recent graduate Magna Cum Larder of the Cooker's and Baker's School, should be given the maximum consideration. As the reader progresses in the problem, the absence of deceit and chicanery will be noticed as a welcome change.

1. GENERAL SITUATION.—*a. Maps.*—General Map, Gettysburg (1925), 1 inch equals 5 miles.

*b.* The Susquehanna River is the boundary between two states which have recently declared war, Blue (east); Red (west).

*c.* Immediately upon declaration of war, Blue, being better prepared, seized all the motor bridges over the Susquehanna River, but was unable to secure the railroad bridges prior to their destruction by Red guards.

2. SPECIAL SITUATION (BLUE).—*a.* At 6:20 PM, 2 April, Colonel A, commanding the Blue 1st Cavalry, which was attached to the 1st Infantry Division, had just departed from a conference with the Chief of Staff, 1st Division, in Harrisburg. During this conference Colonel A learned of the Commanding General's plan to march into Red territory early in the morning 3 April and that the 1st Cavalry would reconnoiter the zone of advance of the 1st Division, clearing the western terminal of the bridge over the Susquehanna at Harrisburg at 7:30 AM,

3 April. The 1st Cavalry is in bivouac near the State House in Harrisburg.

*b. Administrative Situation.*—Colonel A is familiar with the following facts regarding the administrative details in his regiment:

A platoon of 24 one and one-half ton cargo trucks of the 1st Quartermaster Squadron has been attached to the 1st Division and is carrying one day's Class I supplies and the reserve ammunition for the regiment.

Because of the destruction of railroad bridges over the Susquehanna River the railhead for the 1st Division and attached troops will remain at Harrisburg for 3 and 4 April.

The daily train will arrive at the railhead between 4:00 PM and 6:00 PM daily.

Daily distribution of Class I supplies will be made by the platoon from the 1st Quartermaster Squadron to the 1st Cavalry in its bivouac area.

The 1st Cavalry is authorized to purchase hay and wood locally.

The prescribed allowance of Class I supplies has been issued to the regiment at the bivouac area at 5:00 PM, 2 April.

The ration cycle begins with breakfast.

3. REQUIREMENT.—Colonel A's plan of Class I supply for the period 3-5 April, inclusive.

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

4. SOLUTION.—

a. Plan of Class I supply for period 3-5 April.—

(1) Personnel.

(a) Class I supplies issued on 2 April to be used on 3 April as follows:

Breakfast fed before start of march.

Lunch prepared and issued to each man before start of march and to be carried by the individual.

Supper (uncooked portion of ration) carried on wheeled transportation and prepared after arrival in bivouac 3 April.

(b) When the regiment arrives in bivouac 3 April, to release the troop sections of the combat trains to the respective troops so that supper can be prepared. When the platoon from the 1st Quartermaster Squadron arrives in the bivouac area, to direct the issue of the ration carried in the trucks to the troop kitchens for use on 4 April.

(c) Prepare and serve breakfast, and prepare and issue a cooked lunch to be carried by the individual, before the start of the march 4 April. Transport the remaining part of the day's ration (supper) on the ration packs. Issue the field ration arriving in bivouac 4 April on the trucks of the 1st Quartermaster Squadron direct to the troop kitchens for use on 5 April.

(d) Authorize the use of the individual reserve ration in case of emergency.

Procedure for handling Class I supplies on 5 April same as for 3 April.

(2) Animals:

(a) The grain ration issued at 5:00 PM, 2 April, to be used on 3 April as follows:

One-third fed at breakfast before start of march.

Two-thirds carried in grain bag for each animal.

(b) The reserve grain ration in the regiment will be carried in the trucks of the supply section of the regimental combat train, available for issue to troops after arrival in bivouac, 3 April.

(c) Replace the reserve grain ration issued from the supply section of the regimental combat train by the grain ration brought in by the platoon from the 1st Quartermaster Squadron. If the platoon from the 1st Quartermaster Squadron (service train) arrives before the issue of grain from the regimental supply section to the troops has been made, issue may be made direct from the service train to the troops, thus saving the labor and delay in the

extra handling of the grain ration.

(d) Hay will be procured locally supplemented by grazing when opportunity permits. The procedure for the issue of the grain ration to be the same on 4 and 5 April.

(3) Gasoline and oil:

(a) All vehicles of the regiment will start the march with gas tanks and crank cases filled (one day's supply).

(b) The supply section of the regimental combat train will carry one day's supply of gasoline and oil in ten-gallon containers as prescribed.

(c) Refill all vehicle tanks upon arrival in bivouac 3 April from the container in the combat train. Replace the empty containers in the combat train with filled ones upon arrival of the service train.

The procedure for the supply of gasoline and oil on 4 and 5 April to be the same as on 3 April.

(4) Wood:

Purchase the necessary wood for troop kitchen fires locally, using the transportation of the regiment for hauling if necessary.

✓ ✓ ✓

### Chief of Cavalry's Question

In December, 1937, this question was asked: **WHAT IS THE PRESCRIBED SYSTEM OF DEFENSE AGAINST ATTACK AVIATION IN YOUR REGIMENT? IS THIS SYSTEM SATISFACTORY? IF NOT, WHAT ARE ITS DEFECTS? IF THE SYSTEM USED IS UNSATISFACTORY, GIVE YOUR SOLUTION FOR A SATISFACTORY ONE.**

No response was received from this inquiry. The importance of this activity is considered *so vital as to warrant its repetition*.

Please forward your ideas.

The question published in the January-February JOURNAL on the requirements of modern horseshoes elicited the following:

### Horseshoes

In the January-February issue, the Chief of Cavalry's question was:

"What Composition and Design of Horseshoe Should the Army Adopt to Meet Modern Conditions of Hard Surfaced Roads?"

Being a desk soldier and as such an authority on all field subjects, the following is offered on the question:

Since the World War, much has been done to increase the mobility of horse cavalry by improving quality of remount, a lightening of loads, and general improvements in march technique. A rapid march of a 100 miles, is a small concern to our regiments.

Does prolonged field service alter the situation? Could



you, under modern conditions of hard roads, cover 500 miles in three to five weeks? Tests show the present model shoe is worn out after 100 miles on paved roads. Of course, the shoers could and would nail on another but how many times can they repeat this in a month? The foot will not stand such frequent reshoeing.

What has been done about this situation? Tests at Fort Myer and by the Cavalry Board have produced a field shoe with hard steel toe and heel calks that will have longer life on hard roads than the present issue. The new shoe also has an improved shape, more nearly conforming to the average foot, and in many cases can be applied without reforming. Incidentally the same shoe without calks would be used in garrison. In spite of two types, fewer tariff sizes are required than with the present issue. The new design of field shoe will shortly undergo a service test. It promises to be a decided improvement.

What else is there to be done? If we knew that the new field shoe would last, say 15 days, on pavement, what more could be desired? If you were allowed only two characteristics for a field shoe, under the modern condition of hard roads, what would they be? Most would say *long wear* and *minimum slippage*. Now as long as we retain a steel shoe these characteristics oppose each other. Long wear means hard steel which slips easily on wet and high crowned roads. One officer has spent much time researching the field of metals in an effort to bring these two characteristics into accord. He has gone beyond the field of metals and tried rubber, brake lining, etc. He is not going to give up but are we going to let him and the Cavalry Board do all the work?

It is said that during the early weeks of the World War both German and French Cavalry were stopped on occasion, not by the enemy but by the condition of horses' feet. Can this happen to us? Is there a threat to our sustained mobility?

If you think there is more to be done and have a solution, send it along to the collecting station, the Chief's office. Nothing you say will be used against you.

(Signed) IN THE OFFICE.

#### A SOLUTION

"Our best results have been accomplished with a chemical product called Borium. This product comes in powder form and costs retail about \$5.00 a pound. It is fastened

to the shoe by placing a pinch or so at various points on the shoe and applying an acetylene torch to it. The result is a crystal hard mass which will penetrate the hardest surface and permit a horse with shoes so treated to be worked at speed on any pavement with absolute security of footing. Nor does it wear off from ordinary trail use. The application is made to the shoe prior to nailing onto the hoof.

EDGAR SWASEY, JR.,  
Lieutenant, Sheriff's Mounted  
Posse, San Francisco, California.

1 1 1

#### The Cavalry Rifle Team

Over two hundred officers and men of the cavalry regiments answered the call for candidates for the 1938 Rifle Team. At every post two and three times a week these men have been undergoing training and participating in rifle matches. Through the prescribed process of elimination there will be assembled at Camp Perry about the middle of May the best rifle and pistol shots in the Cavalry.

During the first four months of this year there have been many matches between the troops within the regiments and between the teams representing all of the regiments. The final results of these matches is not known at this time. These matches have been important not only for the marksmanship training and experience but have also helped to bring our regiments closer together.

In addition to the matches conducted in and between the regiments, there has been considerable participation in the National Rifle Association winter matches. In these matches our teams have made a very good showing. There has also been participation in the matches of the local shooting associations. Participation in these matches proves that the Cavalry is very active and helps increase our civilian contacts.

Regimental and organization commanders have encouraged their men to participate and have shown their interest and willingness to do all that is possible to help turn out a winning rifle team.

It is hoped that this spirit and interest will be maintained throughout the cavalry after the regimental representatives leave their stations and the 1938 Rifle Team squad assembles at Camp Perry.

*A LARGE SHARE OF THE CREDIT for the success of this operation should go to General Monasterio's cavalry veterans, who demonstrated so well their efficiency in mountain fighting during our northern campaign and who have again repudiated the doubts some military authorities hold regarding cavalry's usefulness in modern warfare.—*

TIME, February 21, 1938.

---

## General Hawkins' Notes

---

### Some Lessons from the War in Spain

By Brigadier General Hamilton S. Hawkins

Two brilliant articles, published by *The Saturday Evening Post* in its issues of March 4, 1933, and March 12, 1938, are worthy of attention. They were written by Major Thomas R. Phillips, C.A.C., U. S. Army. The first of these articles is entitled, "Debunking Mars' Newest Toys." The second is entitled, "Preview of Armageddon."

Major Phillips is a brilliant writer. He has the journalistic style, which makes his articles very readable to civilians as well as soldiers. He must be a well informed and competent officer, judging from the quality of his writings and from the fact that he is at present an instructor at the General Staff School at Fort Leavenworth. But it must be a very rare man indeed who will make no mistakes in writing broadly on the many and varied activities of the military world. Major Phillips has made a few but not many mistakes. The wars in Spain and China have, however, discredited considerably the writings of the Englishman, Liddell Hart.

In reading these articles I have found myself in strong agreement with most of Major Phillips' conclusions. Assuming that his facts and figures are correct, his statements are very convincing.

Many, if not all, of his conclusions and predictions as stated in the article of March 4, 1933, have been proved correct in the warfare in Spain and China. Let us state very briefly some of those conclusions:

Warfare, in proportion to numbers engaged, has become less deadly.

As guns have improved they have become less deadly, due to the fact that soldiers fight at longer distances from each other and are able to obtain better protection from ground features.

Airplanes are a military necessity for many reasons, but although they may harass and kill people in cities, they will not destroy cities. Neither will they terrorize civilian populations into acceptance of defeat. They will not destroy whole fleets nor will they be the preponderating factor in land warfare. Antiaircraft weapons are developing faster than improvements in military airplanes. It is a mistake to legislate for more bombers and fewer warships and more planes and fewer soldiers.

Gas will be used, but it will not be more effective than in the World War. It is impracticable to gas large cities.

Airplanes will be used in greater number, but they will replace none of the older arms.

The tank will be the new offensive weapon.

All modern weapons will serve only to prepare the way

for the man with a bayonet or pistol to fight at close quarters and overcome the enemy.

Cavalry will be needed and used.

Artillery fire is more accurate and effective than bombing.

As a corollary to all this, one must infer that infantry will still remain the Queen of Battles. But the defense continues to have an advantage over the attack, and infantry needs the strong support of all other arms. Five years have elapsed. Now let us examine the article of March 12, 1938.

Several years of fighting, with hundreds of thousands of soldiers and all the modern weapons, have ensued since the publication of Major Phillips' first article, and nearly all of his predictions have come true. In the light of what we now know from the modern wars, he did not, perhaps, grant enough power to airplanes and gave too much to tanks. It has been demonstrated that airplanes can assist the troops both in attack and defense to a greater extent than in the World War, but the tanks, especially the light tanks, have been very disappointing. Airplanes have been, strangely enough, more effective in assisting the infantry than in bombing important centers, roads and railroads.

Major Phillips' conclusions in his second article are briefly as follows:

The Douhet theory that future wars would be won by aviation; that cities, factories, railroads and roads would be destroyed in the enemy country; and that civil populations would thus be forced to sue for peace, has been proved to be false.

The effect of heavy bombs has been disappointing; likewise, the effect of incendiary bombs.

The murderous use of aviation on civil populations has proved a waste of powerful weapons.

Although the Douhet theory has been proved wrong, the use of aviation to assist troops in both attack and defense has been shown to be of great importance.

Defense against aerial attack is not attained by having our own air force lie in wait for the attackers and then take off to pursue and attack the enemy planes. But, our own aviation is able to protect us by destroying the enemy air force on the ground on distant airdromes.

The real defense of localities or of military positions against aerial attack is found in antiaircraft guns. The effectiveness of antiaircraft guns in Spain has been very remarkable. Antiaircraft artillery is the complement of our aviation. With our centers of population or our military bases protected by antiaircraft artillery, our air force can fly out after the enemy, but we must manufacture many more hundreds of antiaircraft guns.

Troops carried in long truck columns are shown to be very vulnerable to air attack. The Italian reverse at Guadalajara was due to this. Strangely enough, Major Phillips states that infantry in Spain moves entirely by truck, and predicts that long columns of marching infantry are things of the past. Here, I cannot concur that infantry will no longer have to march. Short columns can and will march across country. Long columns of infantry in trucks are dangerous. Short columns across country can disperse quickly and avoid the crushing blows that befell the Italians at Guadalajara. Moreover, infantry must leave its trucks and march when they draw close to the enemy. And some of these marches will be as long as the old marches were before contact with the enemy was gained. The very act of deployment on great battlefields entails long marches. The *formation* of the march may be another matter. Even if infantry is carried in trucks at night, it must detruck finally and commence its march. Therefore, the doughboy should practice marching as much as ever. Furthermore, he needs that form of exercise to harden him to the fatigue of the advance on modern battlefields.

The tank, contrary to Major Phillips' prediction in the article of 1933, is shown to be a great disappointment to those enthusiasts who have dreamed that it would be the new offensive weapon. Major Phillips now concludes that the antitank gun, antitank mines, traps and obstacles will stop tanks very effectively. The war in Spain has shown conclusively that whenever tanks have met antitank guns the tanks have been immobilized. They dare not go forward farther nor faster than the infantry. However, they remain of great help to infantry if used in close conjunction with it. We might also add here that mechanized cavalry units, like machine gun units, have become an indispensable part of a large cavalry force.

Now, as to cavalry, Major Phillips' conclusions are not very strongly stated. He seems to be in some doubt. He states that in Spain, "Cavalry is not able on account of its scarcity." He states that there is an ample supply of horses in Spain. But instead both sides buy thousands of foreign trucks. He wonders whether the Spanish have overlooked a native asset, or whether they have discarded an obsolete arm. He thinks that, perhaps the immediate formation of a long continuous front prevented the use of this arm. He states that cavalry is difficult to conceal and offers an easy target to aviation. And finally, he states that although the future of cavalry has not been conclusively settled in Spain, he cannot "refrain from concluding that the ancient partnership of horse and man in war is drawing to a close."

Now, of course, this is one of the few conclusions he has made that I cannot concur in at all. We are quite accustomed to such conclusions by officers who do not understand cavalry. Like many other very competent of-

ficers Major Phillips must be classed as one of these. Ignorance on this subject is so general that I do not consider that this statement is derogatory in the least. Major Phillips stated, in his 1933 article, that cavalry would be needed and would be used in future wars. He is now in doubt because he has not heard of it in Spain. My own study of the Spanish war indicates to me that cavalry could have been very useful in Spain from the very beginning. That it was not was due to several causes. Ignorance of its value, of how to train it and how to use it, is the first reason. Lack of equipment and of time to gather and train horses as well as men in a sudden outburst of civil war is accountable also for not having it at the beginning. The quick success of the insurgents drove the Government forces into fortified cities almost at once. The need for cavalry was then not apparent. But any officer who understood cavalry could have told both sides that the need would come sooner or later. Cavalry is always necessary at the beginning and towards the end of a war. Now it appears that the Insurgent Army, which contains far more trained professional officers than the Government Army, has begun to appreciate this need! We are hearing now of cavalry in all of General Franco's enterprises. And, to the surprise of all who have permitted themselves to belittle or even doubt the value of cavalry, we are hearing of great successes of that newly constituted arm in Spain. Cavalry would have been very useful at the very beginning. It will now be very useful at the nearing end of the war. Its usefulness will, as Major Phillips has really stated at the outset of his argument, be limited only by its numbers or its scarcity.

Cavalry is no more difficult to conceal than the thousands of trucks that are supposed to be transporting the infantry, if as much so. Well handled cavalry does not offer an easy target to aviation. In fact it is less vulnerable to airplane attack than any other arm on the march. Well deployed and swiftly moving men on horses are not the easy victims to machine guns that some persons suppose them to be.

But these notes are not intended as an explanation of the characteristics, training and rôle of the Cavalry Arm, much as such a treatise is needed.

Finally, Major Phillips concludes that war has become so complex that amateurs cannot conduct it successfully, and that the days when a people's militia can stand against trained troops are gone forever.

Finally, although his foot slipped a bit on the subject of the cavalry, Major Phillips' last article, like the first, is a fine contribution to the understanding of both soldier and civilian as to the trend of modern war. And it should disabuse the minds of our legislators that the newest weapons of war will supplant and replace the old and tried arms of the service.





# With the Mechanized Cavalry

## Oldest Cavalry Regiment in the Army Celebrates Anniversary

On Wednesday, March 2, 1938, the First Cavalry, commanded by Colonel Bruce Palmer celebrated the one hundred and fifth anniversary of its organization in a colorful formation at Fort Knox.

This, the oldest regiment of cavalry in the service, first known as the United States Regiment of Dragoons, was formed pursuant to Act of Congress approved March 2, 1833, at Jefferson Barracks, Missouri. When the next regiment of cavalry was organized and became known as the Second Dragoons, the designation of this regiment was changed to the First Dragoons.

When the War Department determined that one regiment of cavalry should be mounted in gasoline propelled and armored mounts instead of on horses it was decided that the First Cavalry should also be first in this development. The regiment moved from Marfa, Texas, to Fort Knox in January, 1933, to assume this new rôle. Since that time it has been hard at work trying to solve many new technical and tactical problems presented by its new mounts.



Brigadier General Daniel Van Voorhis, Commanding the Seventh Cavalry Brigade, pays tribute to the Historic First Cavalry (Mechanized) on the occasion of the observance of its One Hundred and Fifth Birthday Anniversary at Fort Knox, Kentucky. Behind General Van Voorhis are the First Cavalry Standards which proudly bear sixty Battle Streamers awarded by the War Department for participation in battles over a century long service in defense of the United States.

## Importance of Organization and Correct Tactical Employment of Mechanized Units

By Colonel C. L. Scott, 13th Cavalry

The lessons from the Spanish Civil War on page 79 of

January-February, 1938, issue of CAVALRY JOURNAL are most interesting. However, the conclusions arrived at with respect to the vulnerability of tanks and armored vehicles, in my opinion, is not due so much to ineffective vehicles, incompetent staff and highly effective opposition as it is to the lack of *sound organization and tactical doctrines* for the using units.

For example, the following is quoted from an earlier report:

"All tanks have been disappointing in results obtained, due to their vulnerability and also to incorrect tactical employment. . . ."

\* \* \*

"It is clearly shown that tanks unassisted cannot successfully compete against anti-tank weapons which may be quickly concealed, quickly moved and operated with surprise effect. To have reasonable chances of success, a tank attack must be supported by *artillery fire* and *infantry weapons*—and must be followed by infantry to occupy the position and permit the tanks to reassemble and take cover."

Special attention of officers in the 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mecz) was invited to this intelligence summary in order to illustrate the *soundness of our organization and tactical doctrines*, here in the United States, which were conceived long before the war in Spain had started. For example, the support for tank attacks deemed essential for reasonable chances of success according to the above quotation is all available in our Mechanized Cavalry Brigade organization and then *additional means*. The total available is:

- Artillery support.
- Rifle, light machine gun and anti-tank support fire provided by the machine gun troop of the regiment which is transported in mobile personnel carriers instead of afoot like infantry and which occupies and holds positions during the combat car assembly.
- Smoke from the mortar platoon for use against anti-tank weapons.
- Effective and fast ground reconnaissance in the armored car troop.
- Air reconnaissance.

The additional means not yet introduced in Mechanized units abroad are *c*, *d* and *e* above. It is believed that unquestionably in time, combat aviation will be added to the five means now available to support the attacks of combat cars and that supply by air transport in special situations can and will be made.

Further on the same report stated:

"The Italian defeat northeast of GUADALAJARA in March, 1937, demonstrated that: Mechanized forces

(tanks and armored cars) that move ahead too fast and lose the support of slower moving infantry and artillery may be stopped, surrounded, and badly handled by the defense."

Of course this was bound to happen unless the commander of such a force is able to answer the following questions on a mission of this kind:

- a. Where am I going?
- b. What am I going to do when I get there?
- c. What alternative plans have I to fall back on in case of the failure of my original missions?
- d. Have I the necessary maneuver space and the available number of routes for the execution of my original and alternative plans?

Under our Mechanized Cavalry tactics no combat car attack is planned and launched without utilizing all available means of support within the brigade and without a clear-cut answer to the above queries.

It is apparent from a study of this document and others emanating abroad that World War tank tactics are being applied to modern tanks whose speed and radius of action are far greater than any thing known in 1918 and that little consideration has been given to overcoming the development in anti-tank defense devised since 1918. These

old tactics are unquestionably doomed to failure since military history shows conclusively that *new weapons and new equipment demand new methods for their successful tactical employment.*

It undoubtedly is a source of great gratification to those officers who organized our Mechanized Cavalry and envisioned correctly its tactical employment before equipping it, to see now that their ideas on this subject are proven eminently sound by the experiences in the wars in Spain and elsewhere.

As a summary, the article in the CAVALRY JOURNAL and other reports show that the expected opposition to mechanization in future wars *was correctly envisioned when our Mechanized Cavalry was first organized*, and that *our present organization and tactical doctrines are surprisingly sound.* Furthermore, these reports clearly demonstrate that no new arm can be properly organized, equipped and handled in war unless: (1) the missions of the new arm are clearly defined; (2) the opposition to be expected in war is fully visualized; (3) *then the correct organization and tactical employment determined*; (4) and finally *the vehicular equipment is furnished to measure up to the tactical requirements.*

No amount of higher staff work, armor and mass employment can replace this logical procedure.



## Distinguished Visitor at Fort Knox

Major General John K. Herr, who assumed his duties as the Chief of Cavalry in Washington March 26, 1938, visited Fort Knox, Kentucky, Monday and Tuesday, March 21st and 22nd, to witness activities of the Seventh Cavalry Brigade.

The program included a review of the Mechanized Cavalry Brigade in which approximately 300 modern fighting vehicles participated, as well as airplanes of the 12th Observation Squadron.

The Seventh Cavalry Brigade put on a tactical demon-

stration for General Herr, which included an attack on hostile troops (outlined). In this demonstration service ammunition was fired. For the first time the recently equipped reconnaissance troop of the 13th Cavalry participated with its new equipment.

Following the tactical demonstration there was an exercise illustrating the fire power of mechanized cavalry in which 75-mm. artillery shell, 4.2" Smoke Shell, and .50 and .30 caliber machine gun fire was placed upon the hostile targets.



## TRAINING HUNTERS, JUMPERS, AND HACKS.

By Lieutenant Colonel Harry D. Chamberlin. Derrydale Press, New York. 329 Pages. Illustrated. \$10.00.

*Reviewed by Captain H. G. Maddox, Instructor Department of Horsemanship, The Cavalry School.*

*Training Hunters, Jumpers, and Hacks* is a new work on this subject by a master horseman. Keenly anticipated by all horse lovers, this volume lives up to expectations. The author, by long practical association with all types of riding horse activity has acquired a wealth of knowledge about his subject. This knowledge is supplemented by an ability to analyze correctly and to write accurately. The combination of knowledge and skill has enabled the author to produce a remarkably clear and readable book.

The announced objective of this work is to give definite instruction in the practical application of essential, theoretical training, both for the benefit of the inexperienced amateur, as well as the more experienced owner. Mystery and ambiguity are removed from the well-known but little-understood term "conformation." Colonel Chamberlin points out details of "conformation" with special emphasis on "beauties" and "defects." The effects of conformation on gaits and performance are clearly brought out. Practical horsemen will note with approval that Colonel Chamberlin does not approve of sprint races and two-year old racing, which have so adversely affected the development of a generally useful type of thoroughbred.

The type of horse that Colonel Chamberlin teaches the reader to select is one with size, substance and stamina, or in other words, the model hunter which is only another name for the perfect officer's charger, the good jumper, or the ideal Olympic three-day prospect. A careful study of this book will improve the reader's "eye for a horse" whoever he may be.

The qualities of the well-trained horse are clearly defined and stated in such a manner as to become the ultimate objectives of training. The training methods employed to reach these objectives are described with painstaking detail. The conclusions reached are based upon facts and by such sound, logical reasoning as to become irrefutable. The various phases of training are taken up in logical sequence covering all vital points and slighting none. Gradual progression in education concurrent with proper physical development is stressed. The author's scheme of progressive, but unhurried training, develops and retains that calmness in the horse so essential in later

work as a useful mount in the field. This instruction is particularly valuable to the average horseman who seeks to avoid a partially trained horse with uncertain manners, due to hurry in one phase, too much emphasis on another, or improper sequence throughout the training period.

Careful and understanding readers of this book will be better able to make wise selections of horses for type, conformation and disposition. Also, it will be possible for them to prepare training programs and detailed working schedules which, if adhered to, will produce very gratifying results. The hunting man, army officer, and the professional trainer, who follows a schedule based upon Colonel Chamberlin's advice, may reasonably expect to have his horse ready for a creditable performance in the hunting field, the show ring, for garrison or field service, and a pleasant ride under all conditions.

\* \* \*

## TWO WARS AND MORE TO COME.

By Herbert L. Matthews. Carrick and Evans, Inc., New York. 2 Map Sketches. 318 pages. \$2.50.

*Reviewed by Captain Oscar W. Koch, 9th Cavalry, Instructor, Department of General Instruction and Publications, The Cavalry School.*

This book is in fact two books in one, related as to probable effect on the future, covering the wars in Ethiopia and Spain. In the first part the reader is taken bodily by the author, a newspaper correspondent, through the Ethiopian campaign, by his personal experiences and observations, in an extremely vivid manner, and for that reason the first part is the better of the two.

This part is an interesting account of the march of a flank column in which native troops participate with Italian officers. Interestingly, these native troops, in one instance, marched 55 miles in 48 hours through one of the hardest marching territories imaginable, and prepared for battle. Particularly good is the detailed story of the Battle of Ende Gorge wherein the Abyssinians not only had complete success within their means, but the Italians felt that their column was about to be annihilated. For some reason involving national psychology and characteristics, the time set for this annihilation by the Italians never came—the Ethiopians had withdrawn to other parts.

Interesting too is the use of some 9,000 mules in the northern column and later the use of some 3,000 motor vehicles in the march on Addis Ababa.

The second part of the book recounts the experience of the correspondent in Spain where the book was written





## Military Books

A General Staff Officer's Notes .....	\$2.00
American Campaigns, Steele (2 vol.) per set .....	8.00
Army Engineering, Mitchell .....	3.00
Balancing Daily Diets, Perley .....	2.11
Blank Forms for Menu Development or Analysis ..	1.25
Balck's Tactics .....	1.75
Bedford Forrest and His Critter Company .....	5.00
Cavalry Combat .....	2.50
Combat Intelligence, Schwien .....	2.00
Company Administration (Cloth) .....	1.75
(Paper) .....	1.25
Court-Martial Practical Guide .....	1.00
Field Service Regulations .....	.75
Fundamentals of Military Strategy, Robinson .....	2.50
History of Cavalry, Denison .....	3.00
Infantry in Battle .....	3.00
Jeb Stuart, Thomason .....	2.00
Machine Gunner's Pocket Manual (Plain) .....	1.75
(With Clasp, Map Pocket and Slate) .....	2.25
Manual of Administration for CCC .....	.75
Map Reading, Sketching and Aerial Photos (Leatherette) .....	1.80
(Cloth—1.25) (Paper—1.00)	
Modern Military Dictionary (Leatherette) .....	2.75
(Cloth) .....	2.50
National Defense (Reference Data) .....	.75
Officer's Guide .....	2.75
Old Sergeant's Conferences .....	3.00
Outlines of the World's Military History, Mitchell (De luxe edition) .....	3.00
Reserve Officer's Examiner .....	3.75
Tactics and Technique of Cavalry, 8th edition ....	1.50
	4.50

### RECENT BOOKS OF OUTSTANDING VALUE

Fortification, Mitchell .....	2.00
Military History of World War, McEntee .....	7.50
Warfare, Spaulding .....	3.00
175 Battles, Shaw and Vestal .....	2.00
Twenty Years as Military Attache, Mott .....	2.50
If War Comes, Dupuy .....	5.00

Discount on Quantity Orders

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

1624 H. Street, N.W.

Washington, D. C.

under shell fire. This portion is more loosely related and thus loses the interest and readability developed in the first part. Incidentally, the author was attached to the Loyalist Forces.

Throughout there is a vein of feeling that the war in Spain is a war of ideals only, and that one side must win without concession to the other. The ideals bring in many factors, all evidenced by the presence of foreign European powers, particularly Germany and Italy, with Russia and France more or less on the side lines. There are several high lights. Interesting particularly to the military reader should be the net results of the aerial activities. The activities, as portrayed, demonstrated in this proving ground for modern military forces that war will, irrespective of other methods employed, be won on the ground. The author also draws several potent conclusions: German and Italian planes did not come up to military expectations. Russian planes, on the other hand, following the design very closely of the airplanes of the United States, were superior to all other types used. The author predicts that neither Italy nor Germany will engage any of the world powers, particularly Russia, until this deficiency has been remedied. The reason we hear little of air activities now is indicated by the fact that the exorbitant cost of missions, which prove to be fruitless in the large picture, prohibits their use on large-scale missions—an interesting thought. The Italian (and unequivocally Italian) defeat at Brihuega is covered in interesting detail, the Italians using troops which were to receive their baptism of fire at the hands of the Spanish Loyalists, lost such prestige as Italian troops gained a few months earlier in Ethiopia.

The author tells of his journalistic experiences with his newspaper, the *New York Times*, and clearly demonstrates why it is impossible to get accurate details as a campaign progresses.

An interesting book wherein one trained in recording his observations has painted an extremely interesting word picture, but again, as before, particularly in the first part.

### ARMY MESS MANAGEMENT SIMPLIFIED.

Written and Published by Major E. A. Hyde, Field Artillery, U. S. Army, 323 Masonic Temple, Charleston, West Virginia. 187 pages. \$2.00.

Reviewed by Captain Alston B. Ames, Quartermaster Corps, Assistant Commandant of the School for Bakers and Cooks, Fort Riley, Kansas.

*Army Mess Management Simplified*, by Major E. A. Hyde, has many good features. An officer who had been on C.C.C. duty upon reading this book made the following comment: "I wish I had something like this when my acting first sergeant was a private first class with seventeen years' service but no experience in the kitchen, and my only army cook left my camp two weeks after we reached it, and this camp was at the base of Mount Adams in the State of Washington." Undoubtedly this book contains

much of interest to the troop commander or mess sergeant.

The Fort Riley School for Bakers and Cooks has well founded objections to the book from a practical viewpoint. These objections may be briefly stated as follows:

1. Too many canned fruits served. Pastries should be substituted since they are cheaper, offer more variety, and keep the cooks in training.

2. Instead of the menus suggested, the School for Bakers and Cooks recommends the following:

a. Fresh milk and fresh fruits for all breakfasts since the ration is ample to provide for these items.

b. Two salads daily.

c. Pot herbs once a day.

d. Sweet doughs made by cooks once per day (coffee cakes, doughnuts, cinnamon rolls).

e. The above menus depend somewhat upon the location of the command. If situated in the field at some distance from a population center, it is obvious that fresh milk, fresh fruits and salads will be difficult to procure.

3. No provision has been prescribed in this volume for the economical use of left-overs.

4. The 15 days' menu is not considered advisable. Such a menu may lead to repetition and takes away the initiative of the mess sergeant and the cooks. A menu of this type fails to take into consideration the difference in seasons of the year. At some seasons and in some localities fresh fruits, vegetables, meats and poultry are available at low costs permitting a wide choice within the cost of the ration.

For the above reasons the School for Bakers and Cooks does not favor the menus given in this book for service messes in permanent posts and regularly established camps.

Although not approved of for the reasons stated, there is much of value in this book for the officer or mess sergeant on duty in the field. However, a complete exposition of mess management is found in Training Manual 2100-152, "The Army Cook."

THE APACHE INDIANS. By Frank C. Lockwood.  
The Macmillan Company, New York. Price \$3.50.

I have been hoping for forty years that someone would write a book like this, and at last it has been done. And what a book! Thank Heaven Professor Lockwood has had the courage to tell of events as they actually happened; the courage to tell not just of the Apache's treachery and brutality toward the white man, but also of the great wrongs the white man committed toward him. You can't really expect an uneducated savage to keep his word, but you do expect an enlightened Government to adhere rigidly to its pledges. I am particularly happy that Professor Lockwood gives full credit to Lieutenant Gatewood for his part in the capture of Geronimo. I have always believed, together with the others who were in the West at the time, that without Gatewood's assistance Geronimo would never have been brought in alive. The injustice

*Sure to be the standard for years to come*

## Military History of the World War

By GIRARD LINDSLEY MCENTEE  
Colonel United States Army (Retired)

A panorama of 459 maps and diagrams with full descriptions of the military tactics employed in the campaigns on all fronts.

Experts say that this is the best account of the World War yet written. It is a glorified puzzle—you simply sit down with the generals and look at their maps, and then you figure out what you think they are going to do, or what you would do under a similar circumstance. After you have played this little chess game and arranged your pawns you glance at the text and find out what actually took place. It is a most fascinating and absorbing mental exercise, much better than a detective story.

There are thousands of ex-service men who never knew the actual plans and strategy of the battles they fought in, and here for the first time they can piece the whole thing together. They never understood why they were sent over the top at a certain hour at a certain place, why they were ordered to go forward or to retreat, but the maps in Colonel McEntee's book and the accompanying text leave no doubt in the mind. This is a strictly unbiased narrative.

The maps are based on the official records, not only of the Allies but also of the Central European powers.

No history of the War so graphic, so complete, so detailed, has ever been published. It has been approved by the United States War Department upon recommendation of the Academic Board, as a text-book for the United States Military Academy at West Point.

*No military man of 1938 should be without this book*

583 pages, with bibliography and index,  
8½" x 10¾"—\$7.50

ORDER THROUGH

UNITED STATES CAVALRY  
ASSOCIATION

1624 H. Street, N.W.

Washington, D. C.

## FIRST

Consider your own branch of the service. Subscribe to and read its journal or other publication.

## SECOND

Every officer of the Army of the United States who desires to keep abreast of developments in his profession, should, throughout his active service, be a subscriber to:

### THE COMMAND AND GENERAL STAFF SCHOOL

## QUARTERLY

### REVIEW OF MILITARY LITERATURE

1 1 1

In general the contents of each issue will include:

Book Reviews

Original studies

Historical examples

Military News Around the World

Abstracts of Articles from Foreign Military  
Periodicals

Review and Digest of Military Periodicals, Foreign  
and Domestic

Academic Notes of the C&GSS which affect In-  
structional Procedure or Tactical Doctrines

1 1 1

*Post and Organization Libraries and Day Rooms  
should have the Quarterly on their reading tables*

1 1 1

**Subscribe Now — Order Through  
BOOK DEPARTMENT**

The Command and General Staff School  
Fort Leavenworth, Kansas

☐ One year (4 issues) .....\$1.00

☐ Five years (20 issues) ..... 4.00

of Gatewood's superior officers in not even acknowledging his valiant service is beyond comprehension.

*The Apache Indians* is unique; the first book I know of that gives all phases of the various campaigns against these unusual tribes. An entertaining book and a wonderful source of reference to students of the great Southwest.

THOMAS CRUSE,  
Brigadier General U. S. A. Ret.

1 1 1

**THE STRANGER PRINCE.** By Margaret Irwin. Harcourt, Brace and Company, New York, 1937. 527 pages. Reviewed by First Lieutenant F. D. Merrill, 9th Cavalry.

*The Stranger Prince* is a partial biography of Prince Rupert of Bohemia covering the period 1619-1648.

Prince Rupert was the son of Frederick V, king of Bohemia. His mother Queen Elizabeth was the daughter of James I of England.

After serving on the Continent with the Prince of Orange and distinguishing himself at the siege of Breda, Rupert went to England to assist his uncle, Charles I in his war against the Parliament.

Rupert was assigned to command the Royalist cavalry. His personal bravery and unconventional ideas endeared him to his men. One of his first acts was to send a personal challenge to the Earl of Essex, commanding the Parliamentary forces. "My Lord," he wrote, "I hear you are commanding an army," and then proceeded to invite him to personal combat asserting that this would save a great amount of trouble for both forces. The Earl of Essex could not see the logic in this line of thought and declined the invitation. However this incident subjected Essex to ridicule and raised the morale of the Royalist army.

In training the Royalist cavalry Prince Rupert was influenced by the reforms in tactics evolved by Gustavus Adolphus and improved upon them. He despised the doctrine that cavalry was mounted infantry who used their horses only to get close enough to the enemy to fire at them. The doctrine he introduced in brief was that the best defense was offense and that cavalry should operate by surprise, speed and shock, holding their fire until the enemy was in retreat.

In the battle of Edgehill in 1642 Rupert's theories were proven. The Parliamentary forces were driven for two miles by a headlong charge led by him. Edgehill also showed the gay spirit of Rupert. While the two forces were maneuvering for position Richard Shuckburgh of Warwickshire, out with his hounds cast his pack between the two armies. Rupert invited him to get some weapons and take part in the impending battle adding, "Bring your hounds, we might get some hunting after the battle."

During the engagements that followed, Chalgrove, Birmingham and Lichfield, Rupert led his troops with distinction. The fact that the Royalist forces invariably failed to make victories decisive was due to no fault of Rupert's.



ing  
now  
inst  
der-  
est.

He was the only Royalist leader who recognized the fact that an energetic pursuit of a beaten enemy is the only means of obtaining a complete victory and decisive results. He constantly argued that the Parliamentary Army should be destroyed and not merely defeated. Had Rupert's theories been followed in 1642 English history might possibly have been much different.

.  
lar-  
ges.  
av-

History has charged Rupert with impetuosity and imprudence which cost the Royalists the battles of Marston Moor and Naseby. It would be more accurate to say that superior numbers under the fine leadership of Cromwell and the flat disobedience of some of Rupert's subordinates to follow his orders were the primary causes of these defeats. Greatly outnumbered, Rupert took the offensive. Had he been victorious history would have listed him as a great leader. Unfortunately he was defeated and his decisions instead of being bold were classified as imprudent.

Bo-  
of

History's most serious accusation against Rupert concerns his defense and eventual surrender of Bristol to Cromwell. Margaret Irwin defends Rupert's actions at Bristol very warmly. She brings out the facts that he had no supply of ammunition and that he actually held the city after a portion of it had been captured and that his surrender was based on a desire to save the city from total destruction. The actual terms of the surrender show the respect Cromwell had for Rupert as an adversary. The Royalist troops were permitted to leave the city with all honors of war and permitted to rejoin the King's forces without parole.

ry.  
ed  
al  
ia-  
are  
m  
at  
ld  
he  
di-

Mrs. Irwin gives a very fine picture of a cavalryman of distinction and versatility. Regardless of innumerable accusations of imprudence Rupert's ability as a leader can best be judged by the fact that his opponents gave him the greatest respect and praise.

Rupert laid the foundations for the fine traditions of English cavalry and the greatest tribute to him was Cromwell's adoption and continuation of his ideas.

The book is clearly written in an interesting manner and is well worth reading.

1 1 1

#### FORTHCOMING REVIEWS

**CARBINE AND LANCE.** The story of old Fort Sill by Captain W. S. Nye. University of Oklahoma Press. Price \$3.00.

**ADVENTURE ON RED RIVER.** Report on the exploration of the headwaters of the Red River by Captain Randolph B. Marcy and Captain George B. McClellan. University of Oklahoma Press. Price \$2.50.

**INTERNATIONAL EQUITATION AT THE OLYMPIC GAMES, BERLIN 1936.** Contains numerous photographs of American riders and horses, and a discussion of modern riding and horse breeding. By Gustav Rau, General Secretary of the Committee. Price RM 3.50.



## Books for the Horseman

American Polo, <i>Bent</i> .....	\$6.00
A Manual of Equitation (translated from the French), Cavalry School .....	.95
Animal Management, Cavalry School .....	.95
Famous Saddle Horses, <i>Suzanne</i> .....	4.50
Handbook for Horse Owners, <i>McTaggart</i> ....	2.75
Horse Sense for Amateurs, <i>King</i> .....	1.50
Horse Training, Outdoor and High School, <i>Bendant</i> (translated by Lt. Col. J. A. Barry, U. S. Cav.) .....	3.00
Horsemanship and Horsemastership, The Cavalry School .....	1.25
Horseshoeing, <i>Churchill</i> , 1933 .....	1.20
Polo Ponies: Their Training and Schooling, <i>Lt. Paul G. Kendall</i> .....	7.50
Practical Light Horse Breeding, <i>Wall</i> .....	3.50
Principles of Equitation, <i>de Souza</i> .....	5.00
Riding Forward, <i>Capt. V. S. Littauer</i> .....	2.00
Seats, Gaits, Reactions (translated from the French), The Cavalry School .....	.95
Selection and Training of the Polo Pony, <i>Cullum</i> ..	5.00
The Art of Riding, <i>Lt. Col. M. F. McTaggart</i> .	3.50
The Gaits—The Horseman (translated from the French), The Cavalry School .....	.95

#### A NEW BOOK OF OUTSTANDING VALUE

Training Hunters, Jumpers and Hacks, *By Colonel H. D. Chamberlin* .....

✽✽

Discount on Quantity Orders

✽✽

#### THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

1624 H. Street, N.W.

Washington, D. C.

\*\*\*\*\*



### 3d Cavalry (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Va.

COLONEL J. M. WAINWRIGHT, *Commanding*

The Fourth and Final of the series of Fort Myer Winter Indoor Horse Shows was held on Tuesday evening, March 15, 1938, climaxing the most successful series of shows ever held. The shows were held under the direction of Major A. W. Roffe, 3rd Cavalry, who as Horse Show Manager conceived the various courses of jumps and planned the details connected with the shows. The next show will be held about Memorial Day in the Fort Myer Gardens and will be for the benefit of the Army Relief Society.

The Friday Afternoon Exhibition Drills were brought to a close on Friday, March 18th, the final exhibition being in honor of the Army War College and the Army Industrial College with Major General John L. DeWitt, Commandant, The Army War College, as Guest of Honor. All together, ten Exhibitions were held commencing on January 14th and ending on the above date. The drills have become so popular that tickets are always at a premium, there being, in many cases, Six or Eight thousand applicants for the Eighteen hundred seats that the Riding Hall affords.

With the conclusion of the Drills, the Regiment Swung into full time afternoon rehearsals for the Annual Pageant held for the Benefit of the Post Recreation and Relief Fund. The Pageant this year, titled "Hoofprints of 1938" was held on March 31st, April 1st, 2nd and 3rd and was divided into three distinct parts. The first part was based on the life of "Tamerlane," an emperor who ruled from the saddle. It was replete with the gorgeous costumes of the period and included Headquarters Troops' Bridleless Ride as the "Tarter Torch Ride" and with Troops "E," MG and Hqrs. all in the big Finale at the "Fall of Bagdad."

The second part was known as the "Ballet of the Horses" and included such ent'r acts as the Artillery Drill, Capt. Isaac L. Kitts on his Olympic Dressage Mare *American Lady* who interpreted a lovely Viennese Waltz and the smashing Hunt Ride composed of Twelve Girls and twelve officers all dashing at break-neck speed in pairs over a course of twenty-eight jumps to the music of "John Peel" and "A-Hunting we will go."

The Third part, "Life and Death on the Prairie" depicted a Covered Wagon Train going into Camp for the night, an Indian Attack and saved by the "U-N-I-T-E-D S-T-A-T-E-S C-A-V-A-L-R-Y." In this spectacular Act was incorporated The 3rd Cavalry Non-Commissioned

Officers Jump Ride who as Indian Scouts strip themselves of the thin veneer of Civilization in the form of clothing and engage in a savage ride of War. Troop "E," with its beautiful Musical Drill was garbed as Indian Chiefs and demonstrated their famous Drill to the accompaniment of a wealth of Indian Melodies. This act, based on last year's production had been improved and enlarged and was repeated by popular demand.

With the conclusion of the Pageant, will come the Army Day Parade on April 6th, after which the Regiment will engage in Mounted and Dismounted Pistol Firing and Rifle and Machine Gun Firing during the months of April and May.

The Regimental Commander, Colonel J. M. Wainwright, will follow his policy established last year and will visit the 1st Squadron of the Regiment, stationed at Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., during the latter part of May.

Major George H. Millholland, Regimental Plans and Training Officer entered Walter Reed Hospital early in April for an operation which will necessitate his absence from duty until about the opening of the Summer Training Camps about June 15th.

Captain John B. Reybold has been ordered to Fort Riley, Kans. for duty and will depart this station about the middle of June.

Authority has been received and plans are now in effect for the erection of certain buildings at Fort Belvoir, Va. to comprise the Cavalry Summer Training Camps, held heretofore almost entirely at Fort Myer. The available drill and maneuver area at Fort Belvoir is so much greater than at Fort Myer that training facilities will be tremendously improved.

The Regiment tended a review to the retiring Chief of Cavalry, Major General Leon B. Kromer on March 25th. We much regret to see General Kromer leave for he has been as one of us, with his constant presence and interest in all the Post Horse Activities, his familiar figure riding almost daily on the reservation and in the nearby hunts and his cheerful and helpful attitude in all things official.

### 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry— Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

LIEUTENANT COLONEL THOMAS H. REES, JR.,  
*Commanding*

The Squadron has spent a busy winter engaged in the usual indoor training schedule, small bore practice and riding hall drills. Several shooting competitions have been

held with the Vermont State Rifle and Pistol Association and Troop "A" won the Pistol and Revolver Match in the 1937-38 series. The team consisted of the following:

Sergeant Stanley Blazejevski  
Sergeant Roy R. Wood  
Corporal Richard L. Hazel  
Private, First Class, Francis E. Gormley  
Private, First Class, Ernest G. DeMello.

Each member of the team was awarded a gold medal. In addition, Sergeant Blazejevski took first place in the individual pistol match, Class A, receiving another gold medal. In Class B, Corporal Hazel was high man and was also awarded another gold medal.

The second Gymkhana of the winter season was held in the riding hall on the evening of February 11th before a capacity crowd. Unfortunately the riding hall would not hold all the spectators who planned to attend. The events were as follows:

#### EVENT NO. 1—RELAY RACE

In this event there were two teams of four men each per troop and a team from the 7th Field Artillery. Members of each team were numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4. Each team took position with Nos. 1, 3 and 4 and a wheelbarrow at south end of hall, and No. 2, a bicycle, and a saddled horse at the north end. At the starting signal, No. 1, carrying a rifle raced on foot to the north end of the hall and handed the rifle to No. 2. No. 2 slung the rifle over his shoulder, mounted a bicycle and raced to south end, where he handed rifle to No. 3. No. 3 slung the rifle, jumped in a wheelbarrow and was wheeled by No. 4 to the other end of the hall where No. 3 inserted the rifle in the boot on saddle, mounted horse and rode to the south end. On arrival there the rider dismounted and fired a blank cartridge from the prone position. First place and second place were won by Troop "B" teams.

#### EVENT NO. 2—POLO

This was a one-period polo game between teams from Troops "A" and "B." Each team was composed of four men riding bareback and using brooms and a basketball. Troop "B" won this hotly contested game 1 to 0.

#### EVENT NO. 3—JUMPING FOR PRIVATES

In this event five men from each troop and two from Detachment Headquarters Troop jumped a course of eight jumps about 3' 6" high. First place was won by Private Mallows, Troop "A" on *Lady*; second by Private McDonald, Troop "A" on *Blueboy*; third by Private Guevin, Troop "B" on *Poor Boy*; and fourth by Private Ross, Troop "A" on *Mary-Mary*.

#### EVENT NO. 4—MULE RACE

The mule race, always a popular number, gave the audience the usual amusing incidents. First place was won by Private Drowne, Troop "B" and second by Private Martin, Troop "A."

#### EVENT NO. 5—OFFICERS' JUMPING

This was an exhibition of new jumpers that had not placed in Montreal or Boston shows. The course was a figure eight of varied jumps not over four feet high. First place was won by Captain Wenzlaff on his private mount *Milly Russell*; second place by Lieutenant Nogelo (Cav-Res.) on *Banjo*; third place by Lieutenant McCabe on *Blackfast*; and fourth place by Lieutenant Couhig (Cav-Res.) on *Elizabeth*.

#### EVENT NO. 6—GYMNASTIC RIDING

A squad of twelve men from Troop "B" gave an excellent demonstration of bareback riding, including mounting, vaulting, etc., on one, two and three horses, and forming pyramids. These movements were done also when the horses were in the air over a chicken coop jump.

#### EVENT NO. 7—BRIDERLESS RIDING

In this event Troop "A" gave their well known musical ride with some new variations. The climax of the show took place when the men removed the bridles from their horses and then went through the difficult evolutions of the ride.

The music for the Gymkhana was furnished by the band of the 7th Field Artillery which played specially selected music. These shows are increasing in popularity and at this one we were forced to turn away the crowd as even standing room could not be provided.

\* \* \*

#### 4th Cavalry—Fort Meade, South Dakota

COLONEL ROBERT C. RODGERS, *Commanding*

Considerable interest has been evidenced in the regiment during the winter months in the Cavalry Rifle Team try-outs. Troop competitions in the indoor range have brought out the best qualified men and the regimental squad has been selected, consisting of the twenty high men. Outside matches with other regimental, R.O.T.C. and civilian teams have been held as follows:

17th Infantry, Fort Crook, Nebraska.  
14th Cavalry, Fort Des Moines, Iowa.  
4th Infantry, Fort Lincoln, North Dakota.  
R.O.T.C. Pasadena Junior College, Pasadena, California.  
R.O.T.C. Glendale High School, Glendale, California.  
2nd Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kansas.  
Headquarters and Service Company, 109th Engineers, Rapid City, South Dakota.  
Black Hills Shooting Club.

On March 3rd, the regiment observed the eighty-fifth anniversary of its organization. A dismounted ceremony was held in the riding hall. After an invocation by Chaplain J. H. August Borleis, Captain Walter F. Jennings, Adjutant, discussed the history of the regiment. Then Colonel Rodgers presented Troop F and Machine Gun Troop with the athletic trophies that they had won during



the winter season. The formation was concluded by the playing of the Official Fourth Cavalry March by the band.

The winter athletic season came to a close in February. In the Bowling League, Troop F was tied with Machine Gun Troop for first place. Troop F came through in the bowl-off to win by the narrow margin of three pins. Machine Gun Troop annexed the basketball championship, losing only one game during the entire season. After all the scheduled games had been played, the Athletic Officer held a handicap elimination tournament for the basketball teams, which Headquarters Troop won very handily.

The post basketball team has played twenty-seven games to date, winning nineteen and losing eight. It finished third out of sixteen teams in the Black Hills Annual Tournament held at Rapid City, February 16-19, the best that a Fort Meade team has done for years. The team will play another tournament at Harrison, Nebraska, March 17-19.

The Second Squadron officers finally succeeded in defeating the First Squadron officers in the third and final basketball game of their challenge series, 24 to 21, on February 26.

Troop A presented its musical drill and group jumping exhibition at the January Horse Show. Three competitive classes were held. The winners: Class I, Green jumpers, enlisted men: *King Kong*, ridden by Corporal Goman, Troop B. Class II, Open jumpers, officers and civilians, *Johnnie Mack*, ridden by Lieutenant W. W. Culp.

Class IV, Handicap jumping, enlisted men, *Irish Gold*, ridden by Private Pruess, Troop A.

The February Horse Show was featured by Troop E's musical drill. The winners of the classes were as follows: Class I, Green jumpers, enlisted men, *Blatz*, ridden by Corporal Marshall, Troop B.

Class II, Officers remount class, *Silver*, ridden by Lieutenant W. W. Culp.

Class III, Handicap jumping, enlisted men, *Tommy*, ridden by Private First Class Hayes, Headquarters Troop.

The regiment regrets the departure of Lieutenant and Mrs. John F. Rhoades, who will leave for the Philippines early in April. They were recently married in Bozeman, Montana, Mrs. Rhoades being a niece of Colonel Stanley Koch who, until last December commanded the Fourth Cavalry.

### 6th Cavalry--Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

COLONEL GEORGE DILLMAN, *Commanding*

The Regiment is very sorry indeed to lose Major Carlisle B. Cox and Major Robert O. Wright. The former departed on March 1st for National Guard at Cheyenne, Wyoming, and the latter departs March 15th for Organized Reserve Duty at Norfolk, Virginia. Major Norman E. Fiske, formerly Assistant Military Attache at Rome, Italy, and Captain John O'D. Murtaugh, formerly detailed with Field Artillery in Hawaii, are under orders to join.

The period January 1-March 31, 1938, is being devoted to field training of the regiment, squadron, and troops. Troops and squadrons have prepared training schedules to conform to the series of regimental field exercises prescribed for the months of February and March. One field exercise is being held each week. This exercise is preceded by a modified command post exercise in which the regimental staff, squadron and troop commanders participate. This CPX brings the situation to the point where troop participation begins and on the following day troops take position as developed by the CPX and carry out the exercise to its conclusion. This method of training has proven very satisfactory. The exercises conducted by the Sixth Cavalry cover: Reconnaissance, Counter-reconnaissance; Security-advance, flank and rear guards; Outpost; Dismounted attack; Combined attack; Deployed defense; Delaying action and Attack of River line.

Training in the regiment is being conducted in such a matter as to bring the units to a high state of proficiency in field training prior to participation in the 3rd Army Maneuvers to be held during the first two weeks of August, 1938.

The scholastic work of the Thomason Bill officers is practically completed and the month of March is being devoted to review of all subjects covered during previous months.

Basketball and Bowling have occupied the high lights of athletics at this post during the winter season, Troop Leagues having been formed and completed during the months of December, January, February and March. Troop B was the outstanding troop in both leagues and has won the Basketball League with the loss of only one game. The Bowling League has about two more weeks of scheduled games, with Troop B leading the league with 54 wins and only 4 games lost.

A regimental basketball team was organized during the latter part of February and has been making a fine record in competition with civilian teams from Chattanooga. The Fort McPherson basketball team was the guest of the 6th Cavalry on February 26th for renewal of their yearly basketball games. The Sixth Cavalry defeated McPherson in a very close and exciting game by the score of 32-30. On March 5, 1938, the 6th Cavalry team defeated Fort McClellan at Fort McClellan by a score of 37 to 27. This game was billed as being for the Fourth Corps Area Championship.

The Fort Oglethorpe Hunt is enjoying a very active season. Upon the departure of Captain Burnside, the founder and first Master, last December, Major Hans E. Kloefer was elected Master. The Feld has steadily grown and Sunday Fields of 40 or 50 are the usual turnout. Great credit is due to our local Br'er Fox, Private Linder, Kennel Huntsman, who in addition to his excellent Kennel Management, certainly has learned how to think and "run" like a fox, as his drags show. On Washington's Birthday the Commanding Officer, the Hunt Staff and eleven members of the Hillsboro Hunt (Nashville) participated in a morning fox hunt at "Skey" Johnston's at Cleveland.

Tennessee, where two foxes were accounted for. Then all returned to the Post and our Hunt put on a drag that afternoon. In spite of a persistent downpour of rain, a field of over 100 followed the hounds through the meadows, thickets and swales of Chickamauga Park.

### 7th Cavalry—Fort Bliss, Texas

LIEUTENANT COLONEL B. F. HOGE, *Commanding*

On March 12th, 1938, Colonel John K. Herr relinquished command of the regiment and departed from the post en route to Washington, D. C. to assume the duties of Chief of Cavalry. At the new Chief's expressed wish no elaborate ceremony was held on his departure and his final message, published just after he left, read as follows:

"Now that I am obliged to give up the command of this fine old regiment, the Garry Owens, I want to set down in black and white my profound gratitude to the officers, non-commissioned officers and enlisted men of this regiment, for the cheerful and able support they have given me constantly throughout my period of command. This is in line with the grand tradition of the regiment. Needless to say, I will always remain a Garry Owen. I bid you an affectionate farewell.

J. K. HERR,  
Colonel, 7th Cavalry."

On March 9th the regiment held its farewell dinner dance for Colonel Herr at the Hotel Paso Del Norte. Covers were laid for seventy and the new chief was sped on his way with honors appropriate to a Garry Owen farewell.

Captain Yale and Captain Howze will depart on leave soon after the Division Maneuvers, reporting to Fort Leavenworth to attend the course at the Command and General Staff School.

Lieutenant Van Nostrand will leave in July on a short leave before reporting to the Cavalry School as student.

Captain Bixel was transferred to the regiment from the Second Cavalry Brigade and assumed command of Troop F on the first of March.

Lieutenant Fiore and Lieutenant Heckemeyer have been transferred to the 1st Armored Car Squadron.

Ten reserve officers reported on March 14th for two weeks' active duty training with the regiment.

On March 14th the troops of the regiment together with those of the 8th Cavalry were incorporated into the 2d Provisional Cavalry Regiment for training and test in the various organizations proposed for the Cavalry Regiment. This composite training, composed of troops, squadron and regimental phases, will be conducted until the arrival of the troops at the maneuver area in the vicinity of Balmorhea, Texas, about April 20th.

Troop A won the regimental basketball trophy without the loss of a single game. The regimental team is now engaged in the post league, which will soon be brought to a close.

Bowling increases in popularity in the regiment. A post

team was established to compete in the Army YMCA tournament which was country wide. Enlisted bowlers from the Seventh made up a large part of this Post team.

### 9th Cavalry—Fort Riley, Kansas

LIEUTENANT COLONEL GEORGE S. PATTON, JR.,  
*Commanding*

Lieutenant Colonel George S. Patton, Jr., joined the regiment and assumed command February 10, 1938, relieving Lieutenant Colonel Terry de la M. Allen, who assumed command when Lieutenant Colonel Cuthbert P. Stearns, was relieved to join the First Cavalry Division as Chief of Staff.

Lieutenant Colonel Patton made a brief address to the regiment at a Regimental Party in the Post Gymnasium on St. Patrick's Day.

The Regimental Boxing Squad is holding its own in the Post Tournament by leading the C.C.C. Squad by fifty points. Private Sidney G. (Ace) Rucker, Troop E, fighting in the light heavyweight class has won three bouts out of three by the knockout route.

The season for Baseball is at hand and the familiar sounds of cracking bats and popping gloves are all around. We look forward to a splendid team and a successful season.

First Sergeant Charles E. Pearson, Headquarters and Service Troop, having completed the course of instruction prescribed for the Noncommissioned Officers' Course, The Cavalry School, for the year 1937-38, was graduated February 24th. Due to Sergeant Pearson's ability as a horseman he was selected to remain in the Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class.

From the progress being made in the remodeling of our barracks, all indications point to a set of modern barracks by summer.

### 10th Cavalry (less 2d Squadron and M.G. Troop)—Fort Leavenworth, Kansas

On March 12th the last of the Winter Horse Shows was held. These shows consist of a series of five which are conducted by the 10th Cavalry throughout the winter months for the enjoyment of the entire personnel of the post. The interest shown has been very gratifying both in the attendance and entries, for our children and ladies classes have shown over 225 children and 75 lady contestants. The competition in all of the charger, hunter, and jumping classes has been exceptionally keen due to the large number of private mounts belonging to student officers this year.

On March 3rd the annual 10th Cavalry Regimental Horse Show was held with the following results: Class I: Recruit Riding for the Buxton Smith Cup, won by Private T. Heath, Troop A; second, Private E. Carper, Troop A; third, Private A. Porter, Troop B; fourth, Private R. W. Earley, Hq. Troop. Class II: Squad Competition for the

Shaw and Adams Trophy, won by Troop A. Class III: Best Troopers Mount judged on condition of grooming, adjustment and cleanliness of equipment 40%; performance and ability to saddle and unsaddle, bridle and unbridle, mount and dismount, lead, walk, trot, canter and halt 40%; appearance and soldierly bearing 20%; for The Douglas Chamber of Commerce Trophy, won by Private First Class H. Ellis, Hq. Troop; second Private J. H. Allen, Troop B; Third Corp. E. Simon, Troop B; fourth Private First Class L. Green, Troop B. Class IV: Enlisted Men's Jumping for the Steinfeld Cup was won by Private First Class L. D. Thomas, Troop A; second Private First Class A. May, Hq. Troop; third Private E. Tucker, Troop B; fourth Private First Class J. Ashby, Troop A. Class V: Noncommissioned Officers Jumping for the Tucson Chamber of Commerce Cup, won by Sergeant S. A. Wilson, Hq. Troop; second Sergeant J. L. Ridly, Troop A; third Corp. H. Green, Hq. Troop; fourth Corp. E. Simon, Troop B. Class VII: Escort Wagons—To be judged on general appearance, cleanliness and condition of animals, wagons, harness and equipment 80%; driving 20%. This class proved to be exceptionally interesting and after deliberating for some time the judges finally awarded the prizes as follows: First place Private First Class A. Thompson, Troop B; second place Private First Class G. Horn, Troop B; third place Private S. Rhineheart, Hq. Troop, and fourth place Private G. C. Pryor, Hq. Troop.

The indoor winter shows having passed, our interest is now directed to the Spring Show to be held on April 23rd while Captain John P. Willey is busy completing plans for the Eighth Annual Spring Race Meet and Horse Show to be held during May.

Due to the unusual type of work required of the regiment here our training is handicapped but this has been overcome to some extent by holding two drill periods a week in the late afternoon and instruction in rifle marksmanship on the indoor range. This latter instruction has proved so beneficial that an additional range was built to provide adequate facilities for this training. Under the competent instruction of Captain Raymond D. Palmer the regimental rifle team has shown great improvement and competition for a place on it has been keen. Inter regimental and other matches have been fired during the winter as follows: Lost to 3rd Bn., 17th Inf., won from Leavenworth Gun Club, won from 1st Cavalry, placed fourth in Inter Regimental Match with 10th Inf., 5th Cav., 14th Cav., 2nd Cav., and 12th Cav. Team participated in the National Regimental Match the results of which have not been published.

The Regiment bade a fond farewell on February 15th to Lieutenant Colonel N. Butler Briscoe, he having been ordered to duty with the Organized Reserves at Louisville, Ky. Orders have been received ordering the following officers here for duty with the regiment: Lieutenant Colonel W. H. W. Youngs, Captain Z. W. Moores and Captain C. H. Reed. Corporal Joe Oliver, Troop A, is back for duty with the regiment having satisfactorily

completed the course of instruction for noncommissioned officers at Fort Riley, Kansas.

## 11th Cavalry—Presidio of Monterey, California

COLONEL TROUP MILLER, *Commanding*

On February 19, Major General George S. Simonds, Commanding General of the Ninth Corps Area, paid a farewell visit to this station upon invitation of the Post Commander, Colonel Troup Miller, 11th Cavalry, prior to his retirement from active service on March 12, 1938. General Simonds was tendered a Post Review, by the troops of the Presidio of Monterey. A reception and dance was given by the officers of the post as a farewell gesture to the Corps Area Commander who was affectionately regarded by the entire garrison. The well wishes of the command are extended to General Simonds in his retirement. General Simonds, in making his departure from the post expressed himself as greatly pleased over the appearance and performance of the men and animals in the farewell review which was tendered him. He asked the Commanding Officer, Colonel Troup Miller, 11th Cavalry, to convey his thanks to the command for the honor which they showed him and to assure them that they had been a source of great satisfaction to him during the last two years of his service. He not only complimented the command upon its high state of discipline and training but referred again to the very creditable impression which it made on all observers, both military and civilian, at the Fourth Army Maneuvers in 1937 and stated further that this post was one of two posts that had caused him less concern than any other posts in the entire Corps Area.

The President's Birthday Party was celebrated on the Post on January 29th with a Military Ball, held at the Post Recreation Center, for enlisted men and their guests with the objective the raising of funds for contribution to the National Foundation for the prevention of Infantile Paralysis. The news that this entertainment succeeded in raising more money for this worthy cause than any other like endeavor on the Peninsula repaid all participants for the effort expended.

Informal monthly Horse Shows continue to be held in preparation for the Annual Spring Horse Show scheduled for May 6, 7, and 8. These shows provide pleasant entertainment, furnish close competition and encourage the development of proficiency in all phases of equitation.

11th Cavalry shooting team members continue with practice for the Camp Perry tryouts. Inter troop matches with both rifle and pistol are held as frequently as time and weather permit. Matches are also being fired with civilian clubs and with military organizations in the area. The results obtained to date indicate the Regiment may well be proud of the team to be selected upon completion of preliminary tryouts.

A benefit motion picture show for the Army Relief Society was given at the Post Theater on February 10 with the approval and cooperation of the U. S. Army Motion



Picture Service. The entire garrison with guests attended the show thereby contributing to the considerable amount the post was able to donate to the society.

Orders have been received terminating the assignment of the Regimental Commander, Colonel Troup Miller. Colonel Miller will leave the command on May 14 for detail in the Inspector General's Department and duty as the Inspector General of the Second Corps Area with station at Governor's Island.

Colonel Homer M. Groninger has been assigned as the new Regimental Commander. Colonel Groninger is now on duty as the Cavalry Instructor, Pennsylvania National Guard, with station at Harrisburg, Pennsylvania. Colonel Groninger is due to arrive the latter part of June.

Lieutenant Colonel William H. W. Youngs has been relieved from assignment to the Regiment and ordered to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas for duty as Commanding Officer of the 10th Cavalry. Lieutenant Colonel Youngs will leave for his new station the latter part of June.

Orders were received from the War Department on January 28, 1938, terminating the Regimental assignment of all officers on CCC duty. Officers from the 11th Cavalry on CCC duty included:

Lieutenant Colonel Edward J. Dwan,  
Captain William S. Conrow.

First Lieutenants Frederic W. Barnes, Perry B. Griffith and Donald O. Vars have been relieved from assignment to the Regiment and ordered to duty at the Cavalry School as students, Troop Officers' Class, 1938-1939. They will leave the Post about August 1st.

First Lieutenant Travis L. Petty has transferred from Cavalry to the Chemical Warfare Service. Lieutenant Petty was relieved from assignment to the 11th Cavalry and departed for his new station at Edgewood Arsenal, Maryland, on January 24, 1938.

### 12th Cavalry (less 2d Squadron)— Fort Brown, Texas

COLONEL DONALD A. ROBINSON, *Commanding*

The weather continues to be fine. Usually our drill field is covered with 2 or 3 feet of Rio Grande River water at this time of the year. The resaca (old river bed) is seven feet below its peak of last year.

The results of the horseshow held at Fort Brown, Texas, Saturday, January 29th, were as follows:

#### CLASS I—Officers Chargers.

- 1st—*Gold Button*, ridden by Lt. Colonel Harold M. Rayner, 12th Cavalry.
- 2nd—*Sleepy Hollow*, ridden by Major Harry A. Buckley, 12th Cavalry.
- 3rd—*By Jingo*, ridden by Captain Otto R. Stillinger, 12th Cavalry.

#### CLASS II—Open Jumping.

- 1st—*Judy*, ridden by Corporal Jesse Pope, Tr. E, 12th Cavalry.

- 2nd—*Joe*, ridden by Private First Class Cecil Griffin, Tr. F, 12th Cavalry.

- 3rd—*Honeyboy*, ridden by Corporal Richard Williams, Tr. F, 12th Cavalry.

#### CLASS III—Rescue Race.

- 1st—Troop A, 12th Cavalry.
- 2nd—Troop E, 12th Cavalry.
- 3rd—Troop B, 12th Cavalry.

#### CLASS IV—Twelfth Cavalry Horseshow Team Jumping.

- 1st—*Red Feather*, ridden by S/Sergeant Floyd Brown, Hq. Tr., 12th Cavalry.
- 2nd—*Pinto*, ridden by Corporal Albert C. Power, Tr. F, 12th Cavalry.
- 3rd—*Handy*, ridden by Corporal Murry E. Eddings, MG Tr., 12th Cavalry.

#### CLASS V—Hunt Teams.

- 1st—Hq. Tr., 12th Cavalry (*Red Feather*, ridden by S/Sergeant Floyd S. Brown; *Barrister*, ridden by Private First Class DePorter Burr; *Pinto*, ridden by Corporal Ewell W. Maloy).
- 2nd—M G Tr., 12th Cavalry (*Sunset*, ridden by Corporal Leonard J. Anderson; *Big Jim*, ridden by Private William S. Moon; *Red Rain*, ridden by Private First Class Wendell P. Dunn).

#### CLASS VI—Best Trained and Best Turned Out E M Mount.

- 1st—*Queen Anne*, ridden by Corporal Raymond E. Blasingame, Tr. A, 12th Cavalry.
- 2nd—*Reno*, ridden by Private First Class James T. Ransom, Tr. A, 12th Cavalry.
- 3rd—*Lightning*, ridden by Sergeant Jack Williams, MG Tr., 12th Cavalry.

#### CLASS VII—Scout Contest.

- 1st—Private First Class Robert L. O'Pry, Hq. Tr., 12th Cavalry.
- 2nd—Private First Class Wendell P. Dunn, MG Tr., 12th Cavalry.
- 3rd—Private First Class Joseph J. Poteet, Tr. E, 12th Cavalry.

On February 22nd the "Fort Brown Basketball Squad" left Fort Brown for Forts McIntosh and Clark. Two games were played at each post with scores as follows: McIntosh 52, Fort Brown 49; 2nd game: McIntosh 47, Fort Brown 37. At Fort Clark: 1st game: Fort Brown 38, Fort Clark 33; 2nd game: Fort Clark, 37, Fort Brown 36.

Brownsville's first Charro Days Fiesta, from February 24th to February 27th, was participated in by the 12th Cavalry. Three officers and sixty-two enlisted men were organized into a mounted troop of 2nd Dragoons of 1840. They were dressed in the full dress uniforms of the 2nd Dragoons of that period. These uniforms were generously loaned for the purpose by the Commanding Officer, 2d Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kansas.

Second Lieutenant Alexander Surles, Jr., joined the regi-

ment on March 5th and was assigned to the Headquarters Troop.

Orders have been received assigning the following officers to duty at Fort Brown with the 12th Cavalry:

Major Jay K. Colwell,  
Captain James H. Walker.

### 13th Cavalry (Mechanized)—Fort Knox, Ky.

COLONEL CHARLES L. SCOTT, *Commanding*

In order to obtain experience in the operation of Mechanized Cavalry under difficult conditions, the 13th Cavalry held during the winter all scheduled tactical problems regardless of weather. Much data of practical value was secured on starting combat cars during near zero weather (usually by towing) and a good comparison was made of the various starting mechanisms installed in these vehicles. During the night of January 25-26, 1938, a cold rain changed into sleet. The road and countryside on January 25 were covered with several inches of very slippery ice, the temperature was 0°, all traffic on highway 31 from Louisville to the south had ceased due to the dangerous slippery condition of the road. However, the 13th Cavalry made a short march and after getting straightened out on the road, vehicles were able to maintain a rate of march of about 10 to 15 miles per hour. It was found that the major difficulty occurred when halted vehicles of any type had to resume the march up any hills or steep grades. Halts had to be made on level ground. Combat cars without grousers held the road no better than four-wheel-drive vehicles with chains on all four wheels.

It is pertinent to note also that actual test showed that horses smooth-shod could not stand up either on the road or on the frozen surface covering the entire country off the roads. Calks were necessary to move at all.

The regiment is receiving equipment to complete its quota of vehicles and should have its complete vehicular equipment soon. Forty-six GMC 2½-ton trucks were brought down in two convoys from Pontiac, Michigan, under very severe weather conditions of ice and snow. In addition to getting trucks which were badly needed, valuable training was gained in convoy work at this time.

The new M2A1 Scout Car for Headquarters, A and Machine Gun troops are arriving now and training with these new cars is under way.

Experiments and improvements in the radio, armament and mechanical features of the equipment is constantly going on which has already shown many new advantages and should result in marked improvement of the efficiency of the equipment.

The Brigade Motor School will be completed the middle of March and seventeen officers will complete this course.

Small bore competitions within the regiments are being carried on weekly and also competitions with other regiments are being fired.

The regiment began its range season the first of March

and has completed its first group for record with satisfactory results.

Machine Gun Troop won the south league basketball tournament. Several members of the regiment are on the Post Boxing team which decisively defeated Fort Thomas and are now at Fort Benjamin Harrison for the Corps Area Boxing Tournament. Preparations for the baseball season have begun and a championship team is expected from the regiment.

### 26th Cavalry (PS)—Fort Statensburg, P. I.

COLONEL CLARENCE A. DOUGHERT, *Commanding*

During the months of December, 1937 and January, 1938, the 26th Cavalry participated in the department maneuvers and joint maneuvers with the Philippine Army. On the January maneuver the regiment halted for two days at Santa Rosa, Nueva Ecija on the Pampanga River. The Regimental Commander decided that he would take the opportunity to hold instruction in swimming for the horses and instruction in swimming horses for the men. There was no difficulty getting either the men or the horses into the water but there was difficulty in getting them out. "F" Troop, the monkey drill unit, already in training for the Department Military Tournament and the Manila Carnival, went through their whole repertoire on swimming instead of galloping horses. It would really be difficult to say whether the men or the horses enjoyed the swimming more.

The regiment is deeply grieved at the death of Major Herman F. Rathjen, Cavalry, who died on December 28, 1937, and of Captain George V. Ehrhardt, Cavalry and 1st Lieutenant Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry, who died on January 22, 1938.

The baseball season started February 1st. A regimental league has been formed and daily games are played under the direction of Lieutenant Wayne J. Dunn. Troop "E" is leading the league to date.

The following-named enlisted men retired from the regiment during 1937:

Staff Sergeant Marciano Zantua, Hq. Troop.  
Sergeant Procopio Loggan, Troop "F."  
First Sergeant Ananias Acob, Troop "B."  
First Sergeant Julio Diocson, Troop "B."  
Sergeant Melecio Batayola, Troop "E."  
Sergeant Julian Fernandez, Troop "F."  
Sergeant Maximo Ysip, M. G. Troop.

### 112th Cavalry—Dallas, Texas

COLONEL WALTER B. PYRON, *Commanding*

The Federal Armory Inspection of the Regiment will be held during the period March 5th to 20th. All units are hard at work preparing for this yearly event. Captain, Harry Knight, Cavalry, Instructor of the 124th Cavalry, at Fort Worth, Texas, has been detailed by the Corps Area, as inspecting Officer, and Captain McCord McIn-

tire, S-3, has prepared an excellent program to demonstrate the status of training in the regiment for his inspection.

Due to inclement weather the Regimental phase of the squad test scheduled to be completed on January 30th, was not completed until February 13th. The umpires completed testing all squads in the regiment on that date and the winning squad in each troop, as determined by the board, from the combined ratings awarded in the Troop and Regimental phases is as shown below:

<i>Troop</i>	<i>Squad</i>	<i>Corporal</i>
MG	2nd, 2nd Plat.	S. S. Wortham
A	2nd, 2nd Plat.	E. B. Ulrick
B	1st, LMG, Plat.	D. W. Campbell
E	1st, 1st Plat.	J. A. McDonald
F	1st, 1st Plat.	W. E. Dozier

The Regimental board, consisting of Major A. S. Johnson, Captain John B. Dunlap, Captain McCord McIntire, First Lieutenant George S. Metcalf and First Lieutenant T. R. Houghton, appointed by Colonel Pyron to prepare and umpire the test, did an excellent job. The requirements and problems prepared by them not only thoroughly tested the squads in the training prescribed by the regimental program to date, but also gave much valuable instruction to all concerned. In other words, every mistake made was corrected by the umpire in a clear, concise and to the point manner, so the whole squad benefited. First Sergeant H. D. Campbell, Troop A, states that the corporals had received more benefit and instruction from the squad competition than any other phase of training yet held in the regiment.

Great credit is due the board mentioned above. They not only gave a great deal of time in preparation, but also dug down into their pockets and paid their own expenses to test the squads of Troop F, stationed at Tyler, Texas. This shows fine esprit. No funds could be obtained for mileage and expenses.

Colonel Pyron who was keenly interested in the squad competition and watched its progress carefully was much gratified at the results it produced.

Captain William T. Starr, Commanding Troop B, states in gist regarding the test as follows: That to his mind it is one of the best things the regiment has ever had

as far as producing results in basic training is concerned. He states that it certainly put the Corporals on their toes, developed initiative and leadership, and made them appreciate their importance in the troop team.

Due to the Armory Inspection breaking in on the schedule, the winning squad in each troop will not be tested by the regimental board, until early in April to determine the winner of the Pyron Trophy.

As prescribed in the regimental training program, all troops in the regiment, are firing the 22 cal. marksmanship course; and some fine scores have been made.

Lieutenant P. L. Hooper, on his own initiative, has organized a league and is conducting a series of competitions in the 22 cal. between teams from troops in the regiment, ROTC, and Infantry and Artillery National Guard units stationed in Dallas. This excellent idea of Lieutenant Hooper's is not only doing much to stimulate interest and enthusiasm in this most important phase of training in the regiment, but also bringing together different components of the Army in friendly competition.

The Regimental Commander was very much pleased at the initiative of Lieutenant Hooper and has directed all units of the 112th to cooperate with him in making this league a success.

Lieutenant Hooper is well qualified to handle these rifle competitions, as he is a distinguished rifle and pistol shot, and winner of many medals at Camp Perry and in State competitions.

Lieutenant and Mrs. Henry L. Phillips are being congratulated upon the recent arrival of a recruit for the regiment, Henry L., Jr. Lieutenant Phillips states that he has the finest pair of Cavalry legs he has ever seen, and the huskiest voice he has ever heard in a two months old baby.

Colonel Pyron has directed that a night ride for Officers and non-commissioned Officers of the regiment be held during the latter part of June.

Captain McCord McIntire, S-3 has already prepared the preliminary requirements for this ride and sent out memorandums regarding same, in order that riders and horses could commence conditioning at once. To date the entry list is completely filled with a large number of men clamoring to be allowed to enter. Due to the limited number of suitable horses in the regiment, the entries had to be curtailed.

The purpose of this ride is to test endurance, ability and training of each officer and non-commissioned officer acting alone, in finding his way at night, in a strange country, in the minimum time allowed by the conditions.

This will be excellent training in preparation for the Third Army maneuvers next August, at which it is believed most of the Cavalry movements will be made under cover of darkness.

Inspecting officers, from the Eighth Corps, recently completed inspecting the ordnance and leather property of all troops in the regiment and were very high in their praise of the excellent condition of this property.

The remarkable picture of First Lieutenant Forrest M. Cowman's horse drinking (see cut) was taken on a recent



"Boy! that tastes good"



hike of the Machine Gun Troop. Lieutenant Cowman states that his horse sure "Loves his water" and can drink more in the kneeling position than standing.

The regiment is congratulating Second Lieutenants R. Shaw, Elwood K. Morse and Lloyd L. Leonard who recently received their Commissions on the active list. Lieutenant Shaw has been assigned to troop B, Lieutenant Morse to the Headquarters Troop, and Lieutenant Leonard to the Machine Gun Troop.

### 115th Cavalry—Wyoming National Guard

COLONEL R. L. ESMAY, *Commanding*

Celebrating its 50th anniversary the Wyoming National Guard entertained February 22nd at military demonstrations and social events in the eleven towns in which units of the regiment are stationed.

The regiment was organized in 1888 as the First Wyoming Infantry. Its record includes service in the Philippines where it placed the first American flag in Manila; border service and participation in five major offensives of the World War. During World War service the regiment was designated the 148th Field Artillery. Its present designation dates from May, 1922.

Three officers of the Wyoming regiment were guests at a recent Friday Ride at Fort Myer, Virginia. As the guests of Major George Milholland the following officers attended the demonstration by the 3rd Cavalry and 16th Field Artillery: Captain R. L. Markley, regimental adjutant; Captain Frank E. Hays, Commanding Troop I, and Lieut. Mills Astin, adjutant of the second squadron.

Announcement has been made by Colonel Tim McCoy, former state adjutant general and commanding officer of the Wyoming regiment, now a popular movie and circus performer, that his Real Wild West and Rough Riders of the World Show will open its first season at Chicago on April 14. The show will play Washington May 2, 3 and 4. Colonel McCoy is well known at Fort Myer and as is his custom will take advantage of his trip to call upon friends at the post.

Among his performers will be Sergeant Glenn Randall, Troop E, whose high schooled horse, *Rags*, has been a feature of the Cheyenne Frontier Days and other western shows.

Through WPA allotments major improvements are being made at the Troop K Armory at Lusk, Wyoming, and the State Warehouse at Cheyenne.

Difficulties experienced in the late summer months in water supply and the general vagaries of spring at high altitudes have contributed to the efforts to abandon the Pole Mountain Reservation west of Fort Francis E. Warren as the site for the Wyoming National Guard encampment.

Improvements made by the CCC in the vicinity of Guernsey Lake are believed to have made the suggested site completely acceptable for the encampment, dates of which have not been announced. If the change is

authorized it will result in the first change in camp site for more than twelve years.

Lieutenant Les Parsons, Headquarters Troop, is representing the 115th Cavalry at Fort Riley in the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Course which opened March 1st.

### 305th Cavalry—Philadelphia, Pa.

COLONEL VINCENT A. CARROLL, Cav-Res., *Commanding*

The winter riding activities of our regiment, held in the First City Troop Armory, have been particularly lively this year. This has been brought about, in the main, by a monthly, indoor horse show which takes place on the last Wednesday of each month. In order to compete in this show, it is necessary that the officers ride on at least two of the other three Wednesdays during the month. This requirement has caused a great increase in the number of riders, and the interest in the horse show has been far beyond the expectation of our commanding officer.

Our noon luncheons and meetings at the Sansom House are made extremely interesting by the continuation of the series of lectures given by individual reserve officers and based on the book *Cavalry Combat*. This book, published by the United States Cavalry Association, certainly depicts cavalry action in its most varied form, and should be read by all reserve officers who are interested in outstanding cavalry operations in war.

The annual 305th Cavalry Dance, held at the Germantown Cricket Club on Friday evening, February 18th, was a great success. There were in attendance, about two hundred officers and their guests, who danced until the early hours of the morning to the tune of one of Philadelphia's foremost dance bands. Captain Lacy and Lieutenant Maftzinger had arranged several specialty numbers which included a floor show, and a competition, with prizes, for the "Big Apple." We felt that the dance had been enjoyed by all those present, as well as having been financially successful.

Our main active duty training mission this summer will be with the C.M.T.C. In addition one field and nine troop officers will go to Unit Training. Both camps this year will be held at Ft. Belvoir, Virginia, but still under the wing of the old 3rd Cavalry from Fort Myer. We hope that by the time July rolls around we will have a full complement of officers ready to go who will be well versed in all the necessary requirements.

### 306th Cavalry—Baltimore, Md.

COLONEL MATTHEW F. JAMES, Cav-Res., *Commanding*

Special orders from Hq., 62nd Cavalry Division dated December 18, 1937, announced the relief from assignment to the regiment of Colonel J. B. P. Clayton Hill, Cav-Res., he having moved to the II Corps Area. Colonel Hill had been in command of the regiment for over six-

teen years, and had been identified with all of its various activities. The command of the regiment devolved on Lt. Col. Wm. H. Skinner until January 15, 1938, when Par. 3, Special Orders No. 3, Hq., 62d Cav. Div., announced the reassignment to the regiment of Colonel Matthew F. James as its commanding officer. Colonel James was one of the first officers assigned to the regiment in 1921 and served therewith until late in December, 1932. He was the Regimental Executive from 1924 to 1932, and only left at the latter date to assume the command of another regiment, due to his promotion to Colonel of Cavalry. Colonel James has regularly attended the conferences of the regiment in Baltimore, has attended camp with us from year to year, and has been actively identified with matters affecting the reserve component of the army, and so his official return to the regiment and particularly his assuming the command thereof, is welcomed by all.

The regiment congratulates Major Edward A. Kane, 306th Cav., who accepted his promotion under date of January 28, 1938. Major Kane joined the regiment in September, 1932, and has been active in 306th affairs since that date. He is assigned to command the 1st Squadron, vice Major Wallace C. Warner, who becomes S-3 at Regimental Headquarters. Under date of February 9, 1938, a Roster of Officers and Enlisted Men of the Regiment (by unit assignment) was published and distributed. In mid-February 1st Lieut. Reverdy E. Winfree, Cav.-Res., was assigned to the regiment (to Troop "B").

The regimental Pistol Team under Capt. Walter W. Woodruff has been active during the winter, engaging in several matches with other teams, with gratifying results. The team includes Major Kane, Capt. Woodruff, and Lieutenants Dukehart, Castle, Young and Mitchler.

The 20th anniversary of the organization of the 306th Cavalry was celebrated on Sunday, February 6th, 1938. A cross-country ride, held at Fort Myer, was attended by many officers of the regiment from both Washington and Baltimore. The Regimental Dinner followed at 1:30 PM at the Army & Navy Country Club. This was a stag affair and attendance totaled around sixty officers. Colonel James acted as the Toastmaster, and the Guests of Honor included Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Cav., the Chief of Staff, 62d Cavalry Division, Colonel J. Mayhew Wainwright, Commanding 3d U. S. Cavalry, Colonel Henry W. Baird, Cav., Senior Unit Instructor, Lt. Colonel H. McE. Pendleton, Cav., the Assistant Chief of Staff, 62d Cavalry Division, Major J. C. Mullenix, Cav., Unit Instructor, 2d Squadron, and Major George Milholland, 3d Cavalry. Several former members of the regiment were present including Lt. Col. Tompkins, Majors Ames and Freeman. Colonel Latrobe, Wainwright, Baird, Lieut. Colonels Pendleton and Skinner and Majors Mullenix and Milholland each gave a short talk. A brief outline of the history of the regiment prepared by Capt. Blondell, was distributed to the officers present.

The conference attendance record in the regiment has been very satisfactory this inactive season. Officers of the Baltimore group, at the regular semi-monthly general

gathering of reserve officers, have heard Brig. General A. Owen Seaman, the Assistant Quartermaster General speak on "Army Housing," a Committee on Procurement from the Army Industrial College discuss their subject, Lt. Col. Wm. E. Brougner of the Army War College talk on the "Estimate of the Situation" and Major Raymond O. Eliason, 1305th S.U. on "Development of Mechanized Vehicles." The general meeting of March 9th is to be addressed by the Honorable A. J. May, MC, Chairman of the House of Representatives Military Affairs Committee. These general meetings are followed by Unit meetings. At that of February 9th for this regiment, Lt. Col. Skinner discussed the subject "A Cavalry Regiment in Combat," and the February 23d conference on "Machine Guns in Support of the Attack" was given by Capt. Thomas H. Mundy, 306th Cav.

Since the first of the year the officers of the Washington area have profited by lectures by Major E. S. Johnson, G.S.C. on "Personal Features of Mobilization," by Major F. J. Whittaker, Cav. on "Leadership," and others. 1st Lieut. F. A. Taylor, Ord-Res. conducted an excellent conference on the subject of "Musketry," while officers of the regiment gave lectures as follows: Lieut. Laurie Hess on "Cavalry in Delaying Action," Lieut. R. W. Castle on "Musketry," Capt. H. S. See, Engr-Res. talked on "Engineers with Cavalry." The Machine Gun Course has been continued under the direction of Capt. E. H. Daniel, 306th Cav. The Infantry School training film "Machine Gun Platoon in the Attack" was shown at a recent conference, at which a talk on "Direct Laying" was given by Lieut. Lloyd Parker, 306th Cav. Equitation classes at Fort Myer have continued outdoors practically the entire season, due to the unusually mild winter. The Committee working on the 306th Cavalry Farm reports that the Farm is expected to begin operations by early summer.

### 307th Cavalry—Richmond, Virginia

MAJOR MAX LIVINGSTON, Cav-Res., *Commanding*

We just can't keep our Colonels—Col. James was transferred to the 306th in January, and in early March, we lose Lt. Col. Butler, relieved from the Division. Gained in February were Major Ralph S. Koser, of Lewisburg, Pa.; Capt. Joseph Taylor, and Lts. Burdett, Staples, Crews, Wolfe, Bearden, Silberman, Grimes, and Tyler.

Captain J. W. Mann took off late in February in a cloud of dust and his old flivver for Fort Riley, where he joins the N.G. ORC class.

To duty in the Philippines went Major J. R. Finley, Instructor of the 3d Squadron and National Guard in Norfolk. Sorry to lose you Sam, but welcome to your successor, Major Robert O. Wright.

Major Davis and Captain Stokes are learning how the Division works through an active duty tour at Towson, which started March 13, 1938.

The Virginia National Guard seems to like us—Captain G. B. Walker has been induced to take a commission in the 307th Cavalry and will soon transfer.

### 308th Cavalry—Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

COLONEL GEORGE H. CHERRINGTON, Cavalry-Reserve,  
*Commanding*

The Military Ball which was announced in the last news letter was held on February 18th and was one of the highlights of National Defense Week. It was well attended by officers of all components and, apparently, thoroughly enjoyed by all, as attested by the many favorable comments which have been received. During the evening the R.O.T.C. students from the University of Pittsburgh, Duquesne University and Carnegie Tech. participated in a short, beautiful and impressive ceremony with the colors.

Preparations for outside training at the Regimental Training Center are now going forward—the usual spring cleanup and repair period. Riding continues to occupy each Sunday morning in any kind of weather and a few appear on Saturday afternoons. Good weather and a little heat are anxiously awaited so that regular instruction periods can be resumed.

/ / /

### 862nd Field Artillery (Horse)—Baltimore, Md.

MAJOR FRANK GOSNELL, Cavalry-Reserve, *Commanding*

The 862nd Field Artillery holds its conferences at the 104th Medical Regiment Armory, Fayette near Paca Streets, Baltimore, Maryland. The conference is divided into two parts: the first part being devoted to a General Conference and the second part to Unit Instruction. Captain T. C. Ferguson and Captain I. A. Lex, 862nd F.A., will be the Instructors in the absence, during the month of March, of Lt. Colonel Newton N. Polk, F.A., the Unit Instructor.

The regiment regrets to announce the loss of its Commanding Officer, Colonel Roger S. B. Hartz, who has been forced by pressure of business to give up his assignment to this regiment. Colonel Hartz leaves with the best wishes of the whole command.

/ / /

### Norwich University

The year 1937-1938 saw the R.O.T.C. unit, exclusively Cavalry, 300 strong, break from the post at an extended gait. The ideal fall weather, extending up to December 1st found the unit engaged in drill for the freshmen, rifle shooting for the sophomores, pistol shooting for the juniors, and the seniors acting as instructors and assistant instructors in all phases. Field exercises involving the solution of tactical situations emphasizing basic combat principles were held weekly. Cavalry drill four times a week and Cavalry ceremonies each Saturday morning.

The period, December 1st to March 26th, was devoted to theoretical instruction periods on Monday, Tuesday, Thursday and Friday of each week with inspection of barracks and equipment each Saturday morning.

At the conclusion of the spring holidays, April 4th, the unit again moved outdoors to tune up for the annual

Government Inspection held May 19th and 20th. As last year, it is expected that the highest rating given will be received.

Major Charles R. Johnson, Cavalry, P.M.S.&T., has greatly improved the horsemanship at Norwich by arranging extra freshman equitation classes four times a week for each freshman in the Corps, this in addition to the regular weekly equitation period for each cadet.

Captain Ruffner, Cavalry, polo coach, started intramural polo this year which brought out 40 candidates for the polo squad. School Championship Tournaments were conducted for class supremacy both indoors and outdoors, 13 teams competing from all 4 classes. This has resulted in more material for the varsity team which played 5 games away from the University, winning two and losing three. All games played on a split string. This varsity schedule will be extended next year. Norwich will attend the intercollegiate championship indoors next year and both indoor and outdoor tournaments the following year. Varsity polo players will return to school early to condition ponies in order to start outdoor polo the day school opens and take advantage of the two beautiful months of September and October.

Major William H. W. Reinburg, Cavalry, has handled all the horse shows for the year. The major shows being staged Freshman Week, indoors, and Junior Week and Graduation, outdoors. These shows being smoothly run and well attended.

Following graduation June 7th, the Junior Class will attend summer camp at Fort Ethan Allen. The six weeks' training being divided into two parts. Three weeks in the field with marches and camps under various assumed war conditions and three weeks at Fort Ethan Allen completing target practice, combat firing and other tactical training phases.

Thus the cycle is completed and next September will find Norwich University with a beautiful new barracks, thus increasing its housing facilities, and a larger Corps of Cadets anxious to enter upon another year of Cavalry training.



*Norwich University Varsity Indoor Polo Team*



*April*

s last  
ill be

, has  
rang-  
es a  
on to

intra-  
es for  
were  
oors,  
ulted  
ed 5  
osing  
arsity  
tend  
and  
wing  
y to  
day  
tiful

ddled  
eing  
and  
run

will  
eks'  
s in  
med  
om-  
tical

will  
cks,  
orps  
alry